

Unit (1)

Reach for the stars

Listening Text

Interviewer:	Thank you for coming into the studio this morning. Could you start by telling the listeners what you're doing this week?
Astronaut :	Well, this is a very special week for me. Tomorrow afternoon, I'm travelling with two other astronauts to a " <u>secret location</u> ". The <u>launch</u> is at 7.50 the next evening.
Interviewer:	How exciting! Will this be the first time you've been in space?
Astronaut :	Yes, it will. I'm really looking forward to it.
Interviewer:	What's your <u>mission</u> , exactly?
Astronaut :	We have to repair equipment on the international <u>space station</u> .
Interviewer:	What's the problem?
Astronaut :	There are two or three things we need to look at, but the main problem is the temperature <u>control system</u> . We think there may be a leak of some kind.
Interviewer:	Is that a difficult job?
Astronaut :	No, not <u>particularly</u> , but we'll almost certainly need to spend some time working outside.
Interviewer:	Do you mean a <u>space walk</u> ?
Astronaut :	Yes, maybe, but we won't know for sure until we're there and can examine the equipment properly.

Interviewer:	Isn't that really dangerous?
Astronaut :	Not really - We've had a lot of <u>training</u> and of course we're going to be very careful.
Interviewer:	How long will you be in space for?
Astronaut :	We'll probably be there for about five or six days. It <u>depends on</u> how serious the problems are.
Interviewer:	That's exciting. Thank you for talking to us. And good luck with your mission!
Astronaut :	Thank you.

a) Answer the following: -

1- What are the astronauts going to do in space?

.....

2- Why does the astronaut say that space walk is not dangerous?

.....

3- Find in the passage a word that means "job"

.....

b) Choose the correct answer: -

1- What time is the space rocket taking off

a) early morning

b) early evening

c) late morning

d) late evening

2- There may be (a/an)in the temperature control system

a) orbit

b)spoke

c)leak

d)pump

Vocabulary on Listening:

Astronauts(n)	رواد الفضاء	Mission (n)	مهمة – مأمورية
Control (n) (v)	تحكم – يتحكم	Particularly (adv)	خصوصا- خاصة
Conversation (n)	حوار - محادثة	Properly (adv)	يجب بشكل ملائم- كما
Depend on (v)	يعتمد على	Proper (adj)	مناسب – لائق
*dependent on (adj)	معتمد على	Rocket (n)	صاروخ
*independent of (adj)	مستقل عن	Secret (n) (adj)	سر – سري
* dependence (n)	اعتماد – اتكال	Serious (adj)	جاد – خطير
* independence (n)	استقلال	Space (n)	الفضاء مسافة
Equipment (n)	معدات- تجهيزات	Space walk (n)	السير في الفضاء
Exactly (adv)	بالضبط تماما	Special (adj)	خاص
Examine (v)	يفحص – يمتحن	* specialist (n)	اخصائي – متخصص
* examination (n)	امتحان – فحص	station (n)	محطة
Exciting (adj)	مثير	studio (n)	استوديو
International (adj)	دولي	system (n)	نظام – طريقة
National (adj)	وطني – قومي	temperature (n)	درجة حرارة
launch (v)	يطلق	training (n)	تدريب
* launch (n)	اطلاق (صاروخ)	trainer (n)	مدرب
Leak (n)	تسريب – خرق	trainee (n)	متدرب-تحت التدريب
* leak (v)	يتسرب	attach	يربط - يضم
Location (n)	موقع		

Reading

July 2009 was the 40th anniversary of man first walking on the moon. Ever since that day, we have been promised that holidays in space are not far away. Now a representative for the World Tourism Organisation predicts that, in the next ten years, people will be queuing to book their holidays in space. They will fly by rocket to a space station which will be orbiting the Earth at a height of 320 kilometers -that is about the same as the distance from Cairo to EI-Minya. The space Station itself will be like giant spinning wheel with spokes like a bike, wheel. There will be two kinds of spokes: those with ordinary gravity for weightless sports. Some people who are interested in space holidays are worried that, as space tourists, they will suffer from the same horrible side effects as astronauts have suffered from, but experts say that there are now treatments for most side effects.

Just think about such a holiday in space. Everyone who has travelled in space has described the magical feeling of looking down on the Earth as it spins below you. It will be impossible to go shopping or go for a walk, but think of the fun you' can have with weightless football or weightless gymnastics.

For most people, the main disadvantage at the moment is the cost of space holidays. Currently, the cost of a holiday is very high. But like everything else, the more people want to do something, the cheaper it will become. So, if you are interested, start saving now!

a) Answer the following:-

1- When is it predicted that people will go on space holidays to?

.....

2-What does the writer of the article compare the space station to?

.....

3 -What weightless sport will people do in space?

.....

b) Choose the correct answer:-

1- People will fly by (a/an).....to a space station

- a) asteroid b) rocket
c) planet d) plane

2- The main disadvantage at the moment is the ..

- a) distance b) quality
c) length d)cost

Answer Vocabulary on Reading :

anniversary (n)	ذكرى سنوية- يوبيل	orbit (v) * orbit (n)	يدور في مدار مدار – فلك
cost (n) * cost (v)	تكلفة يتكلف	Organization (n) * organise (v) * organized (adj)	منظمة ينظم منظم
currently (adv)	حاليا	Predict (v) * prediction (n)	يتنبأ تنبؤ
describe (v) * description (n)	يصف وصف	Queue (v) * queue (n)	يصطف في طابور طابور
disadvantage (n)	عيب – ضرر	Representative (n)	مندوب – ممثل
distance (n)	مسافة	saving (n) * save(v)	توفير- ادخار يحمى – ينفذ- يوفر
Expert (n) * experience (n) *experienced (adj)	خبير خبرة ذو خبرة	Skilful (adj)	ماهر - بارع

Float (v)	يطفو – يعوم	Side effects (n.)	اثر جانبية
Giant (adj)	عملاق	Spin= revolve(v.)	يدور – يلف
Gravity (n)	جاذبية – خطورة	Spokes (n.)	اسلاك اطار
Gymnastics (n)	تمارين رياضية- جمباز	Treatments (n.)	ادوية – علاج
Horrible (adj)	فظيع	Weightless (adj) * weightlessness(n.)	عديم الوزن انعدام الوزن
Magical (adj) * magic (n) *magician (n)	سحري سحر- شعوذة ساحر- مشعوذ	Wheel (n.)	عجلة

Vocabulary on Listening:

availability (n)	توافر	immune system (n)	جهاز المناعة
benefit (v)	يستفيد- فائدة	improve (v)	يحسن
blood cells (n)	خلايا الدم	instant (adj)	فوري- عاجل
climate (n)	مناخ	Lethargy (n)	كسل
communication (n)	اتصال	Look like (v)	يشبه
compare (v)	يقارن	Muscle atrophy (n)	ضمور العضلات
deterioration (n)	تدهور	Nausea (n)	غثيان
dizziness (n)	دوار- دوخة	Questionnaire (n)	استبيان
e-learning (n)	تعليم اليكترونى	Reason (n)	سبب (دافع)
exploration (n)	استكشاف	Transport (n)	النقل
find out (v)	يكتشف	Vomiting(n)	تقيؤ
global warming (n)	احتباس حرارى	Waste (n)	تبذير – اضافة
Health (n)	صحة	Weakness (n)	ضعف

Workbook

Air conditioning (n)	تكييف الهواء	Arrangements (n)	ترتيبات
Amount (n)	كمية	Centre (n)	وسط
Fuel pump (n)	مضخة الوقود	Physical exercises(n)	رياضة بدنية
Metal bar (n)	قضيب معدني	Replace (v)	يستبدل
Movement (n)	انتقال- حركة	Ring (n)	حلقة – طوق
Objects (n)	اشياء	Route (n)	طريق
Password (n)	كلمة السر	Tank (n)	حوض- خزان
Patient (n) (adj)	مريض- صور	Tap (n)	حنفية – صنبور
Perform (v)	يؤدي - يفعل	Unexpected (adj)	غير متوقع

Definitions :

astronaut	رائد الفضاء	someone who travels and works in space
currently	حاليا	(happening) at the present time.
distance	مسافة – بعد	the amount of space between two places (usually in metres or kilometers)
gravity	الجاذبية	the force that makes objects fall to the ground
gymnastics	رياضة بدنية- جمباز	a sport in which skilful physical exercises and movements are performed
launch (n)	اطلاق صاروخ	the act of sending a missile, space vehicle or satellite into space (ارسال مركبة فضائية او قمر صناعي الى الفضاء)
leak (n)	تسرب	The liquid or gas that gets through such a hole
Mission	مهمة – مأمورية	an important piece of work that a person or group of people has to do for a government or large organisation, especially one that involves travel

side effects	اثر جانبية	An unexpected result of an activity, situation or event
Spin (v)	يدور- يلف حول نفسه	to turn around and around very quickly
Spoke (n)	سلك عجل الدراجة	one of the thin metal bars which connect the ring around the outside of the wheel to the centre.
Weightless	عديم الوزن	having no weight (especially when you are floating in space)
Space walk	يسير فى الفضاء	a task or mission performed by an astronaut outside a spacecraft in space

Expressions & Phrases

a sat-nay system	نظام الملاحة بالاقمار الصناعية	A space walk	السير فى الفضاء
At a height of ...	على ارتفاع	Apply for a job	يقوم بطلب وظيفة
book a holiday	يحجز اجازة	Keep fit	يحافظ على اللياقة البدنية
break down	يتعطل	launch a rocket	يطلق صاروخاً
Do gymnastics	يمارس تمارين رياضية	make predictions	يقوم بعمل تنبؤات
Do repairs	يـرمم- يقوم باصلاحات	On a radio programme	فى برنامج اذاعى
do space walks	يقوم بالمشى فى الفضاء	Queue up	يصطف فى طابور
do weightless sports	يمارس رياضة انعدام الوزن	Reach for the stars	تحقيق هدف صعب
examine a patient	يفحص مريضاً	Solve a problem	يحل مشكلة
for sure	بالتأكيد	Take off	تقلع الطائرة
go on a mission	يذهب فى مهمة	Take turns	يتبادل الادوار
		The distance from ..to..	المسافة من ..الى..

Notes on Vocabulary

{1} explore discover invent Find out

explore يستكشف مكانا (يسافر حول مكان ليعرف عنه معلومات)

» They went on an expedition to explore the River Nile.

» Captain Cook discovered Antarctica القارة القطبية الجنوبية

invent يخترع (شيئا لم يكن له وجود من قبل)

» Have you got any idea who invented the television?

find out يكتشف حقيقة - يكتشف بالصدفة

» I found out what had happened.

{2} Cause Reason

cause (v) يسبب - يحدث **cause of (n)** (يؤدي الى نتيجة) سبب- مسبب

» High winds caused many trees to fall during the night. », The

major cause of these accidents is drivers going too fast.

reason for (n) (دافع) سبب + (noun) or (v-ing)

» The police asked for about the reason for her visit.

» Could you explain your reason for choosing this job?

the reason why جملة (فاعل + فعل)

>> The reason why she was punished is not known.

<p>Verb Cause → Noun <u>of</u></p>	<p>For --- noun or G Reason → Why + جملة</p>
----------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------

{3} a two-hour + اسم مفرد ten-minute+ اسم جمع

يوجد عليها ملاحظتين : الاولى تخص الصفة المركبة (two- hour)

* هنا هذه الكلمة صفة hour والصفات لا تجمع - وهى هنا ليست تمييز

*الثانية: بما انها اصبحت صفة فهي يمكن ان يصف مفرد او جمع مثلا مثل كل هذه الصفات

A two-way street - a black car

Two- way streets - black cars

{4}

reach

Arrive

reach يصل الى (بدون حرف جر)

» We hoped to 'reach the station before the departure of the rain.

arrive (in/ at) يصل

» What time does your plane arrive?

^ He arrived in Cairo yesterday. يصل الى مكان كبير (دولة او مدينة)

» They arrive at the station ten minutes later. يصل الى مكان صغير

Set to يصل الى بصعوبة

» The journey was long but finally we got to our destination.

{5}

anniversary

memory

Anniversary ذكرى سنوية

» July 2009 was the 40th anniversary of man first walking on the moon

Memory ذاكرة / ذكرى لحدث ما

» The memory of that night is still clear in his mind.

{6}

orbit

spin

orbit يدور في مدار (without a preposition)

» A satellite that orbits the Earth.

spin = revolve يغزل/ يدور حول محور

» The Earth spins on its axis

{7}

The + كلما ... صفة مقارنة + The كلما صفة مقارنة + The

The fewer mistakes you make, the higher marks you get.

كما قلت أخطاءك ارتفعت درجاتك

>> The more people want to do something, the cheaper it will

become كلما زاد عدد الناس الذين يستخدمون شيئاً ما / أصبح رخيصاً

The sooner , the better.

خير البر عاجله

{8} current currently currents

current (adj) جار - حالي

» There are several reasons for the current political situation.

currently (adv) فى الوقت الحالي

» Currently, the cost of a holiday is very high.

currents (n) تيارات الهواء - الماء

» Birds of prey الطيور الجارحة use air currents to lift them.

current events الاحداث الجارية

current affairs - accounts

{9} astronaut astronomer astrologer

Astronaut رائد فضاء

» An astronaut is a person who is trained for travelling in space craft (مركبة فضاء)

Astronomer عالم فلك

» An astronomer is a scientist who studies stars and planets (كواكب)

Astrologer عالم فلك

» An astrologer is a person who uses astrology (التنجيم) To tell you the future.

{10} Destination location site

Destination الجهة المقصودة - مكان الوصول

» Sharm Ei-shaikh is a popular Destination for many tourists

Location موضع - موقع جغرافي

» Egypt enjoys a central location in the world map (خريطة)

Site موقع على الانترنت

» I am looking for a website to get information for my new project.

Verbs & Nouns

Launch	يطلق	A new ship/ a rocket/ a campaign حفلة
Examine	يفحص	A car for damage / a patient
Get a leak in	يجد تسريباً في	A tap / a plastic cup

Confusing words for choices and find the mistakes:

Waste	بقايا – نفايات	Waist	وسط – خصر
Air conditioning	تكييف هواء (نظام)	Air conditioner Air conditioned	مكيف الهواء (جهاز) مكيف الهواء (صفة)
Anniversary	ذكرى سنوية	Memory	ذكرى – ذاكرة
Astronaut	رائد الفضاء	Astrologer astronomer	منجم عالم فلك
Cause (of)	مسبب	Reason (for)	سبب
Currently	حالياً في الوقت الحالى	Currency	عملة
Global	عالمي	Local National	محلى قومي
Gravity	جاذبية الارض	Attractiveness	جاذبية – سحر
Launch	اطلاق صاروخ	Lunch	غذاء
Leak	تسرب	Lack	عجز ، نقص
Location	موقع	destination	وجهة سفر
Mission	مهمة – مأمورية	Motion	حركة
Orbit	يدور في مدار	Spin	يدور حول نفسه (محوره)
Queue	طابور	Row	صف
Reach	يصل الى (بدون حرف جر ويتبعه مفعول)	Arrive	In-at يصل (يدون مفعول الا بعد)
Rocket	صاروخ	Pocket Packet	جيب عبوة
Route	طريق	Rude	وقح- غير مؤدب

Verbs & Prepositions :

On ← حرف الجر			
depend on	يعتمد على	land on	يهبط على
Look down on	ينظر الى اسفل- يحتقر	walk on	يمشي على
Spend on	ينفق على		

To			
attached to	مرتبط بـ	look forward to	يتطلع الى
train to	يتدرب على	compare to	يقارن ...بـ
belong to	ينتمي الى - يخص	Refer to	يشير الى
		Connect to	يتصل بـ

Of ← حرف الجر			
a way of	طريقة لـ	kind of	نوع من
a waste of	ضياع لـ	think of = think about	يفكر في
		think of others	يراعي مشاعر الآخرين

From			
benefit from	يستفيد من	suffer from	يعانى من

In			
get a leak in	تسريب من	in space	في الفضاء
interested in	مهتم بـ		

For			
go for.. .a walk/a swim	يذهب لـ	thank for	يشكر على

with		into	
supply..... with	يمد - يزود بـ	turn into	يتحول الى

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- A person who travels and works in space is called.....

a- astronomer b- astrologer c- astronaut d- airman

2- The area outside the Earth's atmosphere is called.....

a- freedom b- height c- distance d- space

3- I won't know.....sure until I call them

a- with b- by c- to d- for

4- We think there may be a leak in the.....control system.

a- fire b- hot c- heat d- temperature

5- Could you start.....,..... telling the listeners what you have done this week?

a- in b- by c- to d- with

6- The astronauts have to repair.....on the International Space Station.

a- equipment b- tools c- instrument d- device

7- We spent the whole day..... in the garden.

a- to work b- work c- working d- to working

8- Their future..... on how well they do in these exams.

a- bases b- depends c- gives d- builds

9- The air conditioning in the hotel isn't working.....

a- properly b- proper c- property d- improper

10- The agency will launch a space..... next month. ,

a- team b-boat c- rocket d- racket

11- Trying to achieve a very difficult aim is really reaching.....the stars.

a- on b- for c- to d- about

12- Egypt celebrated the second.....of the 25th January Egyptian Revolution last manth.

a- souvenir b- anniversary c- memorial d- memory

13- The space station will be orbiting the Earth at.....of 320 kilometres.

a- height b- weight c- width d- length

14- His wages enabled him to become economically independent.....his family.

a- on b- of c- to d- with

15- One of the.....of the job is* the long hours I work.

a- merits b- faults c- advantages d- disadvantages

16- Mr. Ahmed is the only.....in radio communications in our company.

a- buyer b- user c- expert d- helper

17- July 2009 was the 40th anniversary of man's first.....on the moor.

a- land b- landed c- landing d- lands

18- It was a truly.....evening. We enjoyed ourselves a lot.

a- magically b- magician c- magic d- magical

19- Space stations are designed to remain in.....for years.

a- orbit b- spin c- running d- place

20- Industry leaders.....that another 8000 jobs could be available by the end of the year.

a- talk b- predict c- tell d- speak

21- Nabil is a..... and experienced politician.

a- cleverness b-.skill c- skilling d- skilful

22- The patient is responding well to the.....

a- healing b- behaviour c- treatment d- health

23- The police asked her about the.....,.....for her visit.

a- money b- questions c- cause d- reason

24- The tunnel is thetaken by most drivers.

a- fare c- route d- method

25- We'll have to....all the furniture that was damaged in the flood.

a- buy b- replace c- place d- sell

26- Now, it is easy for astronauts to.....space walks.

a- make c- do d- give

27- I had a two-.....training course in America.

a- months b- month's c- month d- months'

28- Overpopulation is a/ an.....problem that we face nowadays.

a-serious b-trivial c-easy d-safe

29- On this mission, the shuttle will.....the Earth at a height of several hundred miles.

a- turn b- spin c- go d- orbit

30- Many people are queuing.....to book tickets.

a- on b- up c- down d- of

31- Poor people suffer from the high.....of living.

a- standard b- cost c- raising d- price

32- A new space.....was built by American scientists.

a- station b- moon c- exploration d- building

33- Two experiments were.....to test this drug.

a- studied b- worked c- achieved d- performed

34- One of the.....on my bicycle wheel needs to be repaired.

a- handles b- pedals c- chains d- spokes

35- Modern technology has.....everyone's lives.

a- proved b- achieved c- modified d-improved

36- We need modern technology to help solve environmental problems like.....warming.

a- national b- global c- international d- local

37- Some people think that space.....is a waste of money.

a- exploration b- discoveries c- inventions d- business

38-....., communications by satellite technology is a good thing.

a- Quickly b- Hurry c- Instant d- Currently

39- Some people have.....more from modern technology than others.

a- won b- used c- wasted d- benefited

40- Our air conditioning has broken down, but someone is coming to.....it tomorrow.

a- repair b- reclaim c- better d- reform

41- The doctor.....me carefully before he gave me the medicine.

a- checked b- tested c- examined d- proved

42- Computer passwords should always be.....You should never tell anyone.

a- secret b- known c- famous d- popular

43- Some drivers have a sat-nav.....in their cars to help them find the best rout

a- system b- process c- set d- apparatus

44- The rocket is going to reach the moon on Tuesday. Everyone watched the.....on TV

a- raising b- launch c- lifting d- flying

45- Space.....can take several years.

a- missions b- work c- shuttle • d- job

46- The can stopped because there was a.....in the petrol tank.

a- leak b- pipe c- tube d- hall

47- The astronauts went on a two-hour.....to replace a broken fuel pump.

a- space flight b- spacecraft c- space walk d- space run

48- Doing.....is a very good way of keeping fit.

a- walking b- fitness c- gymnasium d- gymnastics

49- Two of the.....on the front wheel of my bike were broken in the accident.

a- spokes b- pillars c- pipes d- spikes

50- The.....between Cairo and London is 3500 km.

a- length b- space c- distance d- width

51-.....,I'm studying for important exams. Then, when I finish ,I am going on holiday.

a- Currents b- Current c- Currant d- Currently

52- When you are.....in space, it must be difficult to stand still.

a-weighty b-weightless c-weight d- weightlessness

53- The medicine I'm taking is wonderful. It has no side.....

a- defects b- monuments c- effects d- problems

54-In order to know what is wrong, the doctor must.....the patient.

a- search b- steal c- examine d- think

55-Modern technologies such as the mobile phone make..... easier.

a- procedure b- opinion c- process d- communication

56- The ride at the Amusement park went down so fast that my body felt.....

a- weightless b- purple c- disguised d- fascinating

57- We.....own a Fiat car.

a- professionally b- currently c- never d- once

58-My sister can easily do a spin, as she has been doing..... for years.

a- side effects b- gymnastics c- football d- gravity

59- The rain was so heavy that' the waterwheel..... for three days.

a- launched b-leaked c- spun d- washed

60-.....is the force that keeps objects on the Earth.

a- Gravity b- Gymnastics c- Spoke d- Gravy

61- The doctor assured us that there would be no..... from the medicine.

a- systems b- feeling c- side effects d- fashioning

62- The Fashion House is now.....some new winter dresses.

a- launching b- lunching c- condemning d- coaching

63- This place is not a suitable.....for a supermarket.

a- extraction b- location c- destination d- station

64- The teacher blamed the boy, sitting in the first.....for the noise.

a- queue b- row c- raw d- line

65- The astronauts are going to.....a space station in space.

a- build b- invent c- analyse d- arrest

**66- When he arrived at the bus stop, he saw a number of people
.....to take the bus.**

a- creeping b- crawling c- queuing d- quarreling

**67- The moon has less.....than it, Earth, so you can jump much
higher there.**

a- power b- gravity c- energy d- strength

68- The astronauts went on a space.....to replace a broken fuel pump,

a- tour b- suit c- station d- walk

69- The space station resembles a huge wheel with.....

a- spokes b- spears c- spikes d- spoked

**Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then
write them correctly:**

1- A pocket is launched when it is sent up from the ground into the sky.

**2- Air conditioned is a system used for keeping the air in a building
or vehicle cool.**

3- All countries must work hard to reduce local warming.

4- An astrologer is the person who is trained for travelling in a spacecraft.

5- Astronauts make space walks on the moon.

6- Attractiveness is the force that makes objects fall to the ground.

7- Catch the rope to the branch of a tree.

8- Currency, the cost of a holiday is very high.

9- If the boiler is faulty, it may be lacking dangerous gas.

10- Our main objective is to prove the educational standards.

- 11- Space discovery can help us invest our money.
- 12- The astronauts went on a two-hours space walk to replace a broken fuel pump.
- 13- The distant between Cairo and Alex is 225 km.
- 14- The lunch of the space shuttle was delayed for 24 hours because of bad weather.
- 15- There was a concert to mark the 10th memory of liberation.
- 16- This hotel is in a good destination overlooking the Nile.
- 17- We took an alternative root to the hotel.
- 18- This medicine has side results although it is a good treatment.
- 19- All the planets spin the sun.
- 20- The more people want to do something, the cheapest it will become.
- 21- Nuclear power stations produce dangerous waist

Translation

A) Translate into Arabic:

Many satellites orbit the Earth. Some of them are used to study the Earth, others to study other objects of interest in astrometry. Most satellites are there for commercial or military uses. You may very well have a dish on your house to pick up TV signals broadcast from a satellite, or be looking at the interne-websites via a satellite.

B) Translate into English:

- ١- يعتبر بعض الناس استكشاف الفضاء سبيلاً للتقدم بينما يعتبره آخرون مضيعة للوقت
- ٢- ينبغي أن نتغلب على مشاكلنا ونكون على قدم المساواة مع البلاد التي حققت نجاحات في العديد من المجالات .
- ٣- بالاخلاص والعمل الجاد يمكن لمصر أن تحقق مكانة مرموقة بين الدول.
- ٤- تنفق ملايين الدولارات على الأسلحة والحروب بينما يموت الكثير من الاطفال جوعاً كل عام.

Improve your translation skill

commercial	تجارى	Spacecraft	سفينة فضاء
Military	عسكرى	Drift	انحراف
Pick up	يلتقط	Hang	يعلق
Signals	اشارات	Crumbs	فتات
Broadcast	بث- اذاعة	Drops	قطرات
Via	عبر- بواسطة- من خلال	Mess	فوضى
On an equal foot	على قدم المساواة	Advance	تقدم
Loyalty	الاخلاص	remarkable	مرموق

Language Functions

الموافقة وعدم الموافقة على الآراء Agreeing & Disagreeing to opinions:

Agreeing		Disagreeing	
I completely agree	اوافق تماماً	I completely agree.	لا اوافق البتة
I couldn't agree more.		I don't agree.	
Yes, you're quite right.	نعم انت بحق	I'm not so sure.	انا غير متأكد
I'd go along with that.	اتفق مع هذا	That's just not true.	
That's true.		I don't think so.	

Exercise on Language Functions

Respond to each of the following situations:

- 1- Someone says that space exploration is too expensive. You agree and say why.
- 2- Someone says that computers are a bad thing. You do not have the same opinion. Say why.
- 3- One of your friends say he things walking in space would be very frightening. You think he's right. Say why.
- 4- You hear someone say that all astronauts are very rich. You know this is not true. Say why.
- 5- Someone thinks that mobile phones are useful. You agree and say why.
- 6- One of your friends thinks the internet is a waste of time. You disagree.

Grammar

1) Future simple: will (won't) + Inf.

* Usage : الاستخدام

1- On quick decisions: عند اتخاذ قرار سريع – القرارات الفورية

» I like these shoes. I'll buy them.

2- Offer: العرض

» Since you're tired, I'll cook dinner tonight.

3- Predictions based in what we think (without evidence): التنبؤ بلا دليل (الافتكاسة)

» In the year 2050, there will be colonies in Mars.

4- Future facts: حقائق المستقبل (شئ لا تتحكم فيه)

» Mazen will be 5 years old next month. عند الحديث عن العمر

يضمن / يقسم / يوعد

5- Promises (promise/ swear/ guarantee): الوعود

» I promise that I will get back tomorrow.

» I promised that I would do my best for you .

6- Threats: التهديد

» If you don't stop smoking, I'll tell your father.

7- Warning: التحذير

» Factories must stop polluting the air or we won't be able to breathe

8- Request: الطلب

» Will you help me with my homework, Hazem?

9- Hopes: الامال

» I hope our team will win the next match.

10- Verbs think/ believe/ expect / predict (التخمين و افعال الظن) مع

» My parents think that I'll become an artist one day.

Expressions: be sure/ be afraid: ... مع تعبيرات مثل

» I'm sure Ali will win the race.

Adverbs Perhaps/ certainly/ probably : مع ظروف مثل

» Perhaps, my boss will punish me for being late.

11- First conditional (If): (الحالة الاولى) مع أسلوب الشرط

» Our team will win that match if they play well

12-Time conjunctions as follow: مع روابط زمنية في الحالات التالية

As soon as
After
When
The moment
Before
By the time

مصدر + will + الفاعل * جملة في زمن (مضارع بسيط / مضارع تام) اداة ربط

» you finish your work

» you have finished your work

you will write a report it write a report about it

Please write a report about it

مستقبل بسيط

أمر
طلب

إذا جاءت بعد ادوات الربط السابقة (مضارع بسيط / مضارع تام) فان الجملة التالية تكون

notice

2- (am/ is/ are going to + Inf.)

طموحات / نوايا / خطط

1- For plans/ intentions or ambitions we have for the future:

للخطط والنوايا والطموحات

» He's going to employ more staff. (plan/intention)

» I'm going to become a good prayer one day. (ambition)

» I'm going to move to a bigger house next year (plan)

2- In predictions when there is evince:

التنبؤ بدليل (شيء نراه او نعرفه)

» Look at him! He is going to win the race. (He is ahead of the other runners.)

Notice

الفعل think يأخذ will ولكن اذا كان هناك دليل نستخدم be going to منفردا

» The player is face to face with the goalkeeper. I think he is going to score a goal.

3- Present Simple المضارع البسيط
(He/ She/ It + v- s/es/ies)
(I/ They/ We/ You + Inf. المصدر)

When we refer to programmes or timetables (planes/ trains/buses. etc)

يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الجداول المحددة والبرامج والمواعيد الثابتة مثل السينما والامتحانات والقطارات والطائرات الخ، وغالبا تأتي على افعال معينة مثل:

تقلع " take off – تهبط الطائرة " (start - finish - arrive - leave - land
" open – close) – الطائرة

» The film starts at 9 pm. (cinema programme"

» The plane arrives at Cairo Airport at 7.30 (timetable)

» The course starts in October (timetable) (SB)

4- Present Continuous المضارع المستمر (am/ is/ are + v- ing).

For fixed arrangements in the near future.

يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الأشياء التي تم الترتيب لها في المستقبل القريب وخطط مكتملة

- » I'm flying to London tomorrow morning. (I've got the ticket)
- » We're giving a party tomorrow. (Everything has been arranged)
- » I'm not doing anything tomorrow. (I've arranged not to do anything)

لاحظ الآتي

» I can't see you tomorrow. We'll visit ~~relatives~~.

X

» I can't see you tomorrow. We're visiting relatives.

✓

نحن لا تنبأ بالزيارات ولكن نرتب لها.

» When I get home, I'm ~~watching the news~~ on TV.

X

» When I get home, I'm going to watch the news on TV.

✓

نحن لا نرتب المشاهدة ولكننا ننوي فعل ذلك

لاحظ

أفعال شائعة الاستخدام مع المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل

[come - see - go - visit - meet - leave - stay - travel]

» Tomorrow, we're visiting friends. (SB)

» She is flying to India in the summer. (SB)

» I can't see you this evening. I'm doing my H.W. (SB)

5- Future Continuous المستقبل المستمر

(will be+ v- ing)

يعبر عن حدث سوف يكون مستمرا في وقت محدد في المستقبل.

- » This time next week, I'll be travelling to London.
- » At 5 o'clock tomorrow, My teacher will be explaining unit 2.

6- Future perfect المستقبل التام (will have + p.p)

For an action which will be finished before a stated future time
يعبر عن حدث سوف يكون قد تم قبل وقت معين في المستقبل.

Key words
الكلمات الدالة عليه

By + تاريخ المستقبل - in two weeks time, by this time tomorrow

By + next - before + المستقبل by this time next

» By the End of July, we will have finished tramway Amma.

» By this time tomorrow, I will have reached the airport.

» By 8 o'clock tomorrow, I'll have sent all these invitation cards.

» By 2020, Egypt will have reclaimed vast areas ساحات شاسعة of the desert

7 - Shall

Usage		Example
a) To make an offer	للعرض	Shall I carry the bag for you?
b) To make a suggestion	للاقتراح	Shall we go out for dinner tonight?
c) To ask for suggestions or instructions	تعليمات	What shall we do tonight?

8- Other ways of expressing the future

Rule		Example
a) be to	يجب ان	The president is to visit America next Friday
b) be about to	على وشك	Look! The train is about to leave.
c) be due to (timetables)	على وشك	Their flight is due to arrive at 8.20.
d) be sure/ certain to	بالتأكيد	This plan is sure to succeed.

Exercises on grammar

Choose the correct answer from a. b, c or d:

- 1- If you are too tired to cut the grass, I.....it for you.
a- will cut b- am going to cut c- cut d- am cutting
- 2- I'm buying flour and eggs because I.....a cake.
a- will make b- am going to make c- make d- am making
- 3- I haven't tidied my room yet, but I promise I.....it this afternoon.
a- will do b- am going to do c- do d- have done
- 4- I'm sure I.....my essay on time.
a- am finishing b- am going to finish c- finish d- will finish
- 5- Watch out! You.....bang your head on the door frame.
a- are going to b- will c- shall d- should
- 6- Look at those black clouds. It.....this afternoon.
a- will rain b- is raining c- should rain d- is going to rain
- 7- The plane.....at 10.45, so we'd better check in by 8.45.
a- is going to take off b- is taking off
c- takes off d- will take off
- 8- Sunrise.....at 6.40 am. tomorrow.
a- will be b- is about to be c- is going to be d- is being
- 9- A: Chicken or meat, madam?
B: I.....meat, please.
a- am having b- am going to have c- have d- will have
- 10- Tomorrow morning, the first lesson at school.....at eight o'clock.
a- starts b- was starting c- started d- will start
- 11- They to Paris next Friday. They bought the tickets.
a- are flying b- are going to fly c- fly d- are flown
- 12- My grandfather83 years next May.
A – was b- will be c- is d- is going to be

13- I'm sorry I was late for your lesson today. I promise that I.....late again.

a- am never b- am never being

c- will never be d- would never be

14- Suzan married next August. Everything is set for the wedding.

a- gets b- is getting c- will get d- got

15- He..... you if you come late again.

A will punish b- is going to punish

c- is punishing d- will be punishing

16- Our manager.....dinner with*the minister next Thursday.

a- has b- had c- is having d- is going

17- I..... the heavy bags for you. Please, et me.

a- carry b- am go, 3 to carry

c- will carry d- m carrying

18- The branch of this tree is shaking, it.....

a- falls b- will fall c- is falling d- is going to fall

19- When he.....next week, he will give me some money.

a- come b- will come c- is coming d- comes

20- He will tell me the details after he..... the boss.

a- meets b- will meet c- is going to meet d- is meeting

21- The bank.....a new branch next week.

a- opens b- is opening c- would open d- opening

22- Somebody is knocking on the door. I.....and open it.

a-am going b-will go c-have gone d-go

23-.....help me with this heavy bag, please?

a- Will you b- Are you going to c- Do you d- Should you

24- The museum.....at 10 tomorrow morning as usual.

a- opens b- will open c- is opening d- opening

25-1 expect Al-Ahly.....the league. They have the best players in Egypt.

a- win b- are going to win c- will win d- are winning

26- We.....the meeting as soon as he arrives.

a- start b- have started c- started d- will start

27-1 hope I.....be a famous scientist one day.

a- will b- am going to c- would d- am

28- The ferry.....at 7 o'clock tomorrow morning.

a- leaves b- is leaving c- will leave d- left

29- We.....home by Friday afternoon.

a- return b- will have returned

c- will return d- are going to return

30- Don't phone Ahmed now, he.....

a- is going to sleep b- will sleep

c- will be sleeping d- sleeps

31- Essmat will love this present. Essmat.....this present.

a- loves b- is going to love

c- will be loving d- is sure to love

32- Take some food in case you.....hungry.

a- get b- are going to get

c- will get d- are sure to get

33-5he.....an archaeologies when she leaves university. That is her pta.

a- will become b- has become

c- is going to become d- becomes

34-1 think my brother.....a doctor. He is very clever.

a- is going to be b- will be c- is being d- is

35- It's arranged. We.....the Red Sea this summer.

a- go to b- are going to c- will go to d- shall go to

36-1 expect.....you at the weekend.

a- I'm going to see

b-i'll see

c- I'm seeing

d-i see

37- Are you.....tennis after school today?

a- going to play

b- played

c- play

d-being played

38- The film.....at 7.30 this evening.

a- starts

b- will start

c- is starting

d- is going to star

39- Don't worry. I'm sure you.....them again soon.

a- see

b- are seeing

c- will see

d- are going to see

40- After seeing some of the competition, Leila thinks she.....the bronze medal.

a- will win

b- wins

c- is winning

d- will be won

41-The weather report says it.....cloudy all day.

a- will be

b- going to be

c- is

d- is being

42-The twins.....seventeen next week.

a- turning

b- is going to turn

c- turns

d- will turn

43- If you like, I..... the salad.

a- am making

b- will make

c- makes

d- am going to make

44- We've arranged everything. We.....Hussein up at nine.

a- picks

b- picking

c- will pick

d- are picking

45-Fine. You set the table, and I.....the bread.

a- am cutting

b- cut

c- will cut

d- am going to cut

46-Salma and Sarah have made plans. They.....tomorrow.

a- are going skating

b- are skate

c-will skate

d-do skate

47- Samy can't help you tonight. He.....on a science project.

a- won't be working

b- is working

c- worked

d- works

48- I want to buy a new villa, so I.....save a lot of money.

a- am going to b- will c- going to d- will be

49- I expect he.....pass the exam easily.

a- would b- should c- will d- must

50- She.....to London next spring.

a-is travelling b-travels c-has travelled d-would travel

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly

I- I've decided that I'm doing more exercise in the future.

2-1 expect he is getting the job in a matter of days.

3-1 hope you are visiting me in my home one day.

4-1 am going to possibly come but I may not get back in time.

5- I've spoken to Eman. We will meet next Friday.

6- My brother is going to be 11 years old next week. 7-1 dismiss you if you don't study hard.

8- The match is ending 4.30 this afternoon.

9-I think he crashes. He is driving in a crazy way.

10- The shirt is fashionable; I can buy it soon.

II- As soon as he will meet his friend, he will go to the theatre.

12- We are probably being there for about five or six days.

13-There's a TV programme about wildlife. I think it is being good.

14- There are black clouds in the sky. I think it's raining.

15- We go to London next June. We got the visa.

16- At 9.301 meet Mr. Ahmed at the airport.

17- We will go to the Red Sea this summer. I've already bought tickets.

18- She buys a new computer next week. She has already intended.

19- Before I am coming to this party, I will buy a present for Ahmed.

20- I'll make the dinner when I'll ge* home.

21- The sports centre is opening from 12 to 9 p.m. every day.

22- I'm not sure when they visit us. 23-1 don't know if he moves house.

24-1 can't meet you on Tuesday because I be travelling that day. (LM)

25- Look! I buy that beautiful kitten for Yunus for his birthday. (LM)

26- Ask Sawsan because I think she probably knew the answer. (LM)

27- My flight tomorrow will be at 9.58 a.m. (LM)

28-1 think mother will finishes reading her novel tonight. (LM)

29- Sorry, I can't come because I played tennis with Yehia tomorrow.(LM)

30- George's family take him out tomorrow to celebrate his new job. (LM''

Paragraph

SPACE TRAVEL IN THE FUTURE.

Space is everything and everywhere outside the Earth's atmosphere and that is about 100 Kilometers above our heads. Space is becoming more and more and more important to us. We use satellites اقمار صناعية in space for communications, weather forecast النشرة الجوية the remote sensing الاستشعار عن بعد of underground تحت سطح الارض oil and water and so on. Holiday in space are not faraway بعيد . In the next ten years, people will be queuing يصطف to book يحجز their holidays in, space. They will fly صواريخ to space stations.

Some people who are interested in space holidays are worried that they will suffer from the same horrible side effects اعراض جانبية as astronauts have suffered, but experts خبراء say that there are new treatments for most side effects. Living in space for a long time has its problems. All the time you will be inside your suit بدلة in order to be able stay in a certain place. You have to carry your own oxygen to be able to breathe يتنفس . A great problem is the absence غياب of gravity الجاذبية الارضية. It is hard to live without gravity and you have to be completely fit لائق بدنيا to survive up يبقى there. From the mental عقلية side, you have to keep your mind occupied مشغول. Of course, you have some work to do such as communicating with الاتصال Earth and repairing systems, but there is still a lot of spare time وقت فراغ You have to keep busy by playing computers games, word games, mathematical games and logic منطق games

Translation

(Previous Exams (2002 - 2003))

1- Many people like to collect things like stamps, for example. Some stamp collections are very valuable. Usually the fewer the number of people who have a stamp in their collections, the more valuable that stamp is.

كثير من الناس يحب جمع الاشياء مثل طوابع البريد مثلا. فبعض مجموعات تلك الطوابع ذات قيمة كبيرة، وكلما قل عدد الاشخاص الذين يملكون طابعا معيناً كلما اصبح هذا الطابع اعلى ثمناً.

١ - ان حفلات الزفاف مناسبات هامة فى كل بلد، وهناك تقاليد للزفاف تختلف باختلاف البلد

**** Wedding ceremonies are important occasions in every country. Every country has its own wedding traditions.**

٢ - لقد غزا الانسان الفضاء واكتشف كواكب جديدة ولكن الى الان مازال اسير الخوف من المجهول.

**** Man has conquered space and discovered new planets, but up till now he is still imprisoned in his fears of the unknown.**

* Stamp (n)	طابع	Conquer (v)	يغزو - يقهر
Wedding ceremonies(n)	حفلات الزفاف	Imprison	يسجن - يحبس

2- Egypt has a strong cultural history. Some of the greatest Arab musicians and craftsmen are Egyptians. In the last century, Taha Hussein Tawfic. Al Hakim and Naguib Mahfouz were probably the best known writers Arabic.

تنعم مصر بتاريخ ثقافى قوى فبعض اشهر الكتاب والموسيقيين والفنانين مصريون، وربما كان طه حسين وتوفيق الحكيم ونجيب محفوظ افضل كتاب اللغة العربية فى القرن الماضى.

=====

Science fiction is normally a serious attempt to write about how life would be the future or in another world.

١ - ان الخيال العلمى عادة ما يكون محاولة جادة للكتابة عن شكل الحياة فى المستقبل او فى عالم آخر.

Test (1)

• Respond to each of the following situations:

- 1- Your cousin says that Egypt's squash is the best in the world. You disagree.
- 2- Your classmate asks about life in the countryside.
- 3- Your friend tells you that mother racing is very dangerous. You support her opinion.
- 4- Someone asks you about the reason for liking sport.

2- Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini- dialogues:

- 1- A: May I speak to Ahmed Omar, please?
B: I'm afraid he isn't in the office.
Would you like to leave a message?
A: No, I'll call again later.

Place:.....
Speaker A:
Speaker B:
Function:

- 2- A: Hello! Is that the head mistress?
B: Yes, Can I help you?
A: I'd like to take permission for my son
to leave early today. He is ill.

Place:.....
Speaker A:
Speaker B:
Function:

B- Language Functions

3- Choose the correct answer from a. b, c

1-.....is a sport involving physical exercise and movements that need skill, strength, and control.

- a- Gymnastics b- Gymnasium c- Gem d- Gym

2- Hello, Ali. I.....to the airport in a minute. I'm flying to Paris later this afternoon.

- a- 'm going b-go c-went d-Vegone

3- The car stopped because there was a.....in the petrol tank.

- a- lake b- luck c- lock d- leak

4- My plane to Istanbul.....at ten o'clock.

- a-leave b-will leave c-leaves d-is leaving

5- Our air conditioning has broken down, but someone is coming to.....it tomorrow.

a- repair b- relax c- reform d- realize

6- Perhaps we can get together when I come back.....anything next Saturday?

a- Are you doing b- Will you do
c- Do you do d- Will you have Done

7- The engineer.....the machine carefully before he tried to repair it.

a- examined b- dismissed c- repaired d- planned

8- Hi! My .family.....me out Today for passing my exams.

a- take b- are taken c- have taken d- are taking

9- The Bermuda triangle's events are considered.....No one could solve them.

a- known b- famous c- frightening d- secret

10-I.....an English film with my friends tomorrow. I bought the tickets.

a- 'll watch b- 'm watching c- watch d- will have watched

11- The astronauts went on a two-hour.....walk to replace a broken fuel pump.

a- sea b- land c- space d- spice

12- A: Do you have any plans for the weekend?

B: I.....Mr. Afifi on Saturday morning.

a- meet b- 'm going to meet c- 'll meet d- would meet

13- Some drivers have a sat-nav.....in their car to help them find the routes.

a- centre b- system c- cylinder d- cycle

14- It's arranged. We.....to the Red Sea this summer.

a- are going to go b- go c- will go d- will be going

15- The rocket is going to reach the moon on Tuesday. Everyone watched the.....

TV. a- lunch b- label c- lift , d- launch

16- By next August, I.....my secondary school.

a- finish b- is finishing c- will have finished d- finishes

4- Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

- 1- I didn't tell anyone about that. I kept it known.
- 2- You're driving too fast, you will hit the car in front.
- 3- In space, you can enjoy doing weighty sports.
- 4- The plane will leave in half an hour. We'd better hurry.
- 5- Most medicines have slide reflects. They are not completely safe.
- 6- I take my exams next month. The school has already announced the timetable.

B- Reading

5- Read the following passage and then answer the questions:

A space station is a spacecraft that circles the earth constantly. For an astronaut, it is like a home in space. They can live there for many months. Although we all have adventurous ideas about space, living in a space station is far from easy. One of the main problems that astronauts have to face in space is the problem of weightlessness. Not only do the things around the astronaut float, but also the astronaut spends all of his or her time floating in mid-air. The food eaten by astronauts is sticky, so it sticks to their spoons. A lot of the food is also dehydrated and placed in special packaging. This way the astronaut may not receive taste sensation given by normal food but definitely receives the same amount of required nutrients. The astronauts in a space station work hard. They study the effects of weightlessness on themselves and on plants and animals. They are also able to alert people on the Earth of natural disasters such as earthquakes and hurricanes before they happen. In this way scientists on the Earth can take special precautions.

A- Answer the following questions:

- 1- How do astronauts cope with problems associated with weightlessness?
- 2- In what way can astronauts help people on the Earth?
- 3- How can the astronauts eat their food easily?

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The main idea of the passage is.....

- a- how space stations are made.**
- b- natural disasters**
- c- life on a space station and its atmosphere**
- d- how astronauts eat**

6- Read the following passage and then answer the questions!

Kamel was to have his final examination the next day. He was so anxious that he failed to sleep. So he decided to go out for a walk in the stillness of the night. The streets were calm and almost deserted. The night air raised Kernel's spirits so much that when he met the policeman he wished him good evening with a smile.

This pleasant attitude did not get the response Kamel expected from the policeman. On the contrary, the policeman looked at him suspiciously and asked him where he was going at that time of the night. Kernel's answer did not convince the policeman who insisted on taking Kamel to the police station. There, Kamel almost lost his patience because the officer was busy reading some papers.

At the time Kamel expected the worst, the young officer's hard face changed into a smile, "You ought to be put in prison for being out so near daybreak, Kernel," said the officer in a friendly voice. Kamel was surprised to be called by his name but when he looked more closely at his face, he realised that he was Ahmed, a friend of his elder brother. When Kamel went home, he forgot about what happened and had a few hours of deep sleep before he went to the examination.

A- Answer the following questions:

- 1- Why couldn't Kamel sleep that night?**
- 2- How did the policeman respond to Kamel's friendly attitude? Why?**
- 3- What did Kamel expect the officer to do?**

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- This story took place in.....

a- summer b- spring c- winter d- autumn

5- The policeman.....

a- smiled back to Kamel c- took no notice of Kamel

b- was unpleasant to Kamel d- wished Kamel good evening

The Redder (The Prisoner of Zenda)

7-A) Answer the following questions:

1- Why doesn't Rudolf Rassendyll need to do anything?

2- What kind of work does Rose suggest Rudolf should do?

3- What is the difference between Rudolf Rassendyll and Robert?

4- Rassendyll had not been lazy all his life. Show how.

B) Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:

"Why should I do anything? I have nearly enough money to do anything I want to.

1- Who says this? To whom?

2- Why does he/ she say this?

3- Do you agree with his/ her opinion? Explain your point of view.

C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

1- Rose tells Rudolf Rassendyll that he needs to get himself a wife.

2- The coronation is in Strelsau, the capital of Zenda.

8- Write a paragraph of about 100 words about:

"The role of youth in the progress of the country"

9- A) Translate into Arabic:

Scientists think that the world temperature will increase due to many reasons. Global warming is the major reason for that as well as gases from cars and factories. Cutting forests make the matter worse. All governments must co-operate to protect our planet.

B) Translate into English:

يسبب السفر في الفضاء آثارا جانبية سيئة لذلك لا يمكن للناس العاديين السفر في الفضاء.

Unit (2)

Hope: The Prisoner of Zenda

Listening Text

Presenter:	In today's Book Programme, we're going to hear about the life work of the writer Anthony Hope. In the studio we have Professor David Lyons from the University of South London. Professor Lyons Anthony. Hope is well-known for his adventure novels, but what sort of a man was he? Was he like his heroes?
Prof Lyons:	Not in the least. Anthony Hope was a well-educated English lawyer who started writing in his free time.
Presenter:	Could you tell us something about his early life?
Prof Lyons:	Yes, of course. Anthony Hope was born near London in 1863. After finishing school, he went to Oxford University, where he studied classics. He was interested in politics and was a good speaker in university debates. After Oxford, he trained as a lawyer and started working in London in 1887.
Presenter:	So how did he start writing?
Prof Lyons:	Well, lawyers in those days had plenty of free time - so Hope wrote short stories for magazines. He wrote his first novel, a Man of Mark! in 1890, but had to pay for the publication himself.
Presenter:	How about his most famous book, The Prisoner of Zenda? Did he pay for that?
Prof Lyons:	No. By then, he was already a successful novelist. The amazing thing about this book was how quickly he wrote

	it. He first had the idea in late 1893 and 'the book was published- in April 1894. It was immediately successful.
Presenter:	What was so special about The Prisoner of Zenda?
Prof Lyons	Well, It's a very exciting adventure story which takes place in fictional European country. I think it was so popular because it is not about everyday lives - people like escapism
Presenter:	Did Hope marry?
Prof Lyons:	Yes, he did. In 1903, he went on a speaking tour to other countries and met Betty Somerville. The couple were married later that year] then came back to England, where they had two sons and a daughter.
Presenter:	And did he continue writing?
Prof Lyons:	Yes , in all he wrote thirty-two works of fiction, but The Prisoner of Zenda was always his most popular story. It made him a lot of money. A lot of films have been based on the story, and the public still enjoy reading it today.
Presenter:	Thank you, Professor Lyons - that was most interesting. If you haven't read The Prisoner of Zenda yet, borrow it from your local library. It's one of those books you just can't put down.

a) Answer the following:-

1- What was Antony Hope first job?

2-What was his first novel?

3-When did the couple Hope and Betty Somerville get married.

b) Choose the correct answer:-

1- The prisoner of Zenda takes place in a.....country called Ruritania.

a) Real b) imaginary c) true d) natural

2-Hope had the skill of writing his novels very.....

a) Slowly b) carelessly c)fast d) gradually

Vocabulary on Listening:

Activities (n)	انشطة	invent (v)	يخترع
Active (adj)	نشط	invention (n)	اختراع
Adventure (n)	مغامرة	Lawyer (n)	محام
Adventurous (adj)	مغامر	mark (n)	علامة
Based on (adj)	قائم على	plenty (adj)	وفرة - كثرة
Classics (n)	الادب اليونانى القديم	politics (n)	السياسة
Classical (adj)	تقليدى - كلاسيكى	popular (adj)	شعبى - عام
Couple (n)	الزوجان	publication (n)	نشر (كتب ومجلات)
Debates (n)	مناظرات	publish (v)	ينشر
Debate (v)	يناظر - يحاور	Publisher (n)	الناشر
escapism(n)	الهروب من الواقع	Sign (n)	علامة
escape (v)	يهرب	Sort (n)	نوع
everyday (adj)	يومي	sorted (adj)	مصنف
fictional (adj)	خيالى	special (adj)	خاص
fiction (n)	قصة خيالية	take place (v)	يحدث
free time	وقت الفراغ	well-educated (adj)	متعلم جيدا
heroes (n)	ابطال	education	تعليم
immediately (adv)	حالا	well- known(adj)	مشهور - معروف

Reading

The story takes place in nineteenth-century Europe. Rudolf Rassendyll, a wealthy Englishman, is the cousin of Rudolf Elphberg, who is about to become the new king of Ruritania, a fictional country in central Europe. Rudolf Rassendyll decides to travel to Ruritania to attend the coronation of his cousin, whom he has not met before. Soon after he arrives, he is walking through a forest where he meets the future king. The two men are surprised to discover that they are so alike: they are almost identical twins. The cousins talk excitedly about the coronation. However, on the night before the great occasion, Rudolf Elphberg is kidnapped by his younger brother Michael and locked in the castle in the town of Zenda. Although Michael does not have the right to be the next king of the country, he is popular with some people in Ruritania. He wants to stop the coronation so that he can become the next king himself. Rudolf Rassendyll solves the problem by taking his cousin's place. Because the two men look so alike, nobody realises what is happening and the coronation takes place as planned. While Rudolf Elphberg is in the castle, Rudolf Rassendyll lives the life of the king and spends time with his cousin's friends. At the same time, he realises that he cannot remain the king of Ruritania forever. He decided to rescue Rudolf Elphberg. The story ends happily for Elphberg when he finally becomes the new king. Michael dies. Rassendyll says goodbye to his friends and leaves the country. The people of Ruritania never find out what has really happened.

a) Answer the following:-

1- When does the story take place?

2-What is Ruritania?

3-How can Rudolf Rassendyll solve the problem in Ruritania?

b) Choose the correct answer: -

1- Rassendyll decided to.....the King of Ruritania.

a) Kill b) Kidnap c) rescue d) imprison

2-Rassendyll travelled to Ruritania to attend the.....

a) coronation b) corporation c) conversation d) cooperation

vocabulary on Reading

alike (adj)	متشابه	identically (adv)	على نحو متطابق
as planned	كما خطط	kidnap (v)	يختطف
attend (v)	يحضر	locked in	محبوس
attendance (n)	حضور	occasion (n)	مناسبة
castle (n)	قلعة	realize (v)	يدرك
central (adj)	متوسط - مركزي	remain (v)	يبقى - يظل
coronation (n)	تتويج	remains (n) .	بقايا - آثار
cousin (n)	ابن العم- ابن الخال	rescue (v)	ينقذ
excitedly (adv)	بأثارة - بانفعال	right (n)	حق
forest (n)	غابة	surprised (adj)	مندعش- متعجب
forever (adv)	الى الابد	wealthy (adj)	ترى
identical (adj)	متطابق	wealth (n)	ثروة

Critical Thinking & Communication:

a sports club (n)	ناد رياضي	leader (n)	قائد
area (n)	منطقة	member (n)	عضو
belong to (v)	يخص- ينتمي الى	neighbour (n)	جار
choice (n)	اختيار	pharaoh (n)	فرعون
exclamation (n)	تعجب	regular (adj)	منتظم
expression (n)	عبارة - تعبير	return to (v)	يعود الى
fall off (v)	يقع - يسقط	show (v)	يعرض- يبين
groups (n)	مجموعات	surprise (n)	دهشة
interests (n)	اهتمام	the rest (n)	الباقى

Workbook

altogether (adv)	تماما- معا	join (v)	يلتحق
ancient Greeks (n)	اليونانيين القدماء	literature (n)	ادب
architecture (n)	عمارة	morally (adv)	اخلاقياً
attack (n)	هجوم	normal (adj)	طبيعي
available (adj)	ميسر- متاح	organised (adj)	منظم
break in (n)	اقتحام	print (v)	يطبع
ceremony (n)	احتفال	real (adj)	حقيقي- اصلي
discussion (n)	مناقشة	reduce (v)	يقلل
entertainment (n)	تسلية	require (v)	يتطلب
formal (adj)	رسمي	worries (n)	قلق - متاعب

Definitions

Alike	متشابه- سواء	almost exactly the same; similar
Attend	يحضر	(formal) to go to a meeting, school, church, etc.
Castle	قاعة - حصن	a very large strong building built in the past to protect the people inside from attack
Classics	دراسة ادب ولغة وتاريخ اليونان وروما القديم	the study of the language, literature and history of ancient Greece and Rome
Coronation	تتويج- حفلة تتويج	a ceremony in which somebody officially becomes a king or queen
Couple	زوجان	two people who are married or have a romantic relationship
debate	مناظرة	an organised discussion on an important subject

Escapism	الهروب من الواقع	entertainment or activity that helps you to forget about your work or worries and think of something more enjoyable
Fictional	خيالى	not real, invented by a writer
Occasion	مناسبة	an important event or ceremony
Publication	نشر (كتب ومجلات)	when a book is printed and available to buy
Wealthy	ثرى - مقتدر	having a lot of money, land or valuable possessions
Well-educated	متعلم جيداً	having had a good education
The right to do something	الحق فى فعل شىء	legally or morally allowed to do something

Phrases & Expressions & Idioms:

A fictional story	قصة خيالية	Mademoney	درت عليه المال
At the coronation	فى حفل التتويج	Not in the least	أبداً - على الإطلاق
At the same time	فى نفس الوقت	Say goodbye to	يودع
(be) put in prison	يوضع فى السجن	So (looked) alike	متشابهون جداً
Everyday life	الحياة اليومية	Take place	يحدث
Go on a tour	يذهب فى جولة	Work as	يعمل كـ

Notes on Vocabulary

{1} classic classical classics

Classic (adj) نموذجى - كلاسيكى (اثر) خالد (يحتفظ بقيمته مدة طويلة)

»No one can forget the classic film "Gone with the wind".

»(classic mistake - classic suit- classic film - classic design)

classical (adj)

قديم - تقليدي

» I prefer classical music to pop.

»(classical literature, classical languages, classical architecture)

classical (n)

دراسة اليونانية واللاتينية وآدابها

»In the past, many English children studied classics at school. (SB)

{2} Every day Every day

everyday (adj)

(صفة) يومي (بعدها اسم)

» Going to work in the morning is just part of everyday life.

every day (adv)

(ظرف زمان) كل يوم

»I run five miles every day.

{3} Like as alike

Like

اسم + (مثل)

»It was a small animal like a rat.

» Their car is like ours.

» There is no like you.

As

جملة - وظيفة + كما (مثل)

»I invested the money as you suggested.

» He is working as a headmaster.

Alike

متشابه - على السواء

» The two children are very alike.

» We try to treat women and men alike in this company

{4} Hear Hear of Hear about hear from hear that

hear (v) heard heard

يسمع (يصل الى الاذن بدون مجهود)

» She heard the dog barking outside.

hear of

يسمع عن (يعرف)

»Have you heard of a composer called Webern?(have knowledge of)

hear about

يتلقى معلومات (يسمع عن)

» Have you heard about the new copyright law? (have information)

hear from يتلقى اخباراً من او يستلم خطاباً او مكالمة من

» I look forward to hearing from you انى متطلع لمعرفة اخبارك

hear that + جملة

» I hear (that) you're leaving.

{5}

right	alright
-------	---------

Right صح (عكس خطأ)

» Do children of that age really know the difference between right and wrong?

right يمين (عكس يسار)

» Could people in the front two rows move a little to the right? »

Do you write with your right hand or your left?

right / rights حق - حقوق human rights حقوق الانسان

» What gives you the right to talk to me in that high-handed way?

alright اتفقتنا - حسناً

{6}

Take place	Take (someone's) place
------------	------------------------

take place يحدث = happen = occur

» All these events took place before you were born.

take someone's place يحل محل

» The headmaster was absent so Mr Essam took his place.

{7}

Adjectives + At

* Good at

* Bad at

* Brilliant at

* Expert at (on - in)

* Terrible at

* Clever at

{8} Occasion event incident

Occasion مناسبة (لحدث شيء)

» She gave me a gift on the occasion of my birthday.

Event حدث لا ينسى

» Marriage and death are unforgettable events.

incident احداث فى قصة

» The incident in the story are interesting.

{9} A couple A pair of Double twins

a couple = two مثل (زوج وزوجته) زوجان

» the new couple will travel in a honey moon.

a pair of زوج من شيء واحد فردتين

» I bought a pair of shoes.

Double مضاعف الضعف

» We have to double our effort.

Twins توأم

» The twins are so alike.

Confusing words for choices and find the mistakes

couple	١-الزوجان (رجل وزوجته) ٢-زوج من (منفصلان)	pair	زوج من (اشياء مرتبطة)
everyday	يومي (صفة)	double	مضاعف- مزدوج (صفة)
borrow	يقترض	every day	كل يوم
kidnap	يختطف (شخص)	lend	يقرض
sports *	١-رياضات (اسم جمع) ٢-رياضى (قبل الاسم)	hijack	يختطف (طائرة)
hero	بطل (شخص قام بعمل بطولى)	sporting	رياضى (صفة)
adventure .	١-مغامرة (اسم) ٢-به مغامرة (قبل اسم) (adventure game/story)	sporty	محب للرياضة (Sporty family)

debate	مناظرة (جدال) غالبا اطراف الجدل مختلفون	champion	بطل (شخص فاز بمسابقة غالبا رياضية)
occasion	مناسبة	adventurous	مغامر (صفة)
neighboring	مجاور	discussion	مناقشة (اعطاء آراء عن شيء مهم)
ceremony	مراسم (مناسبة سعيدة او حزينة)	ceremony/ event	احتفال – حدث
right	حق- صواب	neighborly	لطيف – ودي
attend	يحضر (مدرسة – حفلة)	celebration	احتفال (مناسبة سعيدة)
take place	يحدث	fight	قتال
coronation	تتويج	pretend	يتظاهر
		take part	يشارك
		co-operation	تعاون

Opposites

alike/ identical	متشابه – متطابق	unlike/ different	مختلف
borrow	يستعير - يستلف	lend	يعير - يسلف
early	مبكرا	late	متأخرا
famous	مشهور	unknown	غير مشهور - مجهول
fictional	خيالى	non-fictional	واقعي – حقيقي
free	حر – خال	busy	مشغول
Married	متزوج	divorced	مطلق
planned	مخطط	spontaneous	عفوي – تلقائي
plenty	وفرة – كثرة	littleness/ few	قلة
Quickly	بسرعة	slowly	ببطء

Special	خاص	general	عام
Successful	ناجح	unsuccessful	فاشل – مخفق
wealthy	ثرى	destitute/ poor	فقير – معدم

Verbs & Prepositions :

about ' '			
hear about	يسمع عن	tell about	بخير ... عن
talk about	يتحدث عن		
For			
well- known for	مشهور بـ	pay for	يدفع ثمن شيء
in			
(be) locked in	محبوس فى	break in	يقتحم
(be) interested in	مهتم بـ		
Of		out	
sort of	نوع ما	Find out	يكشف
On		off	
(be) based on	قائم على	fall off	يقع – يسقط من اعلى
Down			
put down	يضع جانبا		

Exercises on Vocabulary

1- We plan to expand our business.....all over the country.

a- routes b- movies c- motives d- activities

2- This young man is very brave. He enjoys.....and unusual holidays.

a- tiredness b- stress c- adventure d- pressure

3- This film is.....on a true story.

a- rely b- based c- depend d- telling

4- A newly married.....have moved in next door.

a- twins b- couple c- pair d- double

5- Most people now accept that computers are part of.....life.

a- everyday b- every day c- all day d- whole day

6- The brothers were treated as.....after rescuing the boy from drowning.

a- champions b- heroes c- criminals d- victims

7- This hotel is very.....with tourists.

a- popular b- famous c- well-known d- good

8- She's got all.....of problems at the moment.

a- prices b- colours c- sizes d- sorts

9- I had.....?. of time to think over what I was going to do.

a- penalty b- many c- lot d- plenty

10- Anthony Hope was a well educated English.....

a- lower b- lawyer c- law d- loyalty

11- We're going to hear.....the life and work of the writer Anthony Hope.

a- from b- at c- about d- on

12- All hotels have been especially selected for their.....location.

a- centre b- central c- sincere d- sensitive

13- He talked.....to reporters about his hopes of winning the race.

a- excitement b- excited c- excitedly d-exciting

14- The wife promised her husband to be faithful for him.....

a- for now b- for long c- for sure d- forever

15- This house is almost.....to the one where I lived as a child.

a- identical b- the same c- alike d- like

16-The child was.....and 100,000 pounds was demanded for his release.

a- hijacked b- kidnapped c- killed d- shot

17- She went to her hotel room and.....herself in.

a- looked b- closed c- put d- locked

18- Their wedding will be good.....to meet all my old friends.

a- case b- accident c- occasion d- time

19- Freedom of speech is one of the basic human.....

a- rights b- nights c- sights d- appearance

20- He was facing a difficult.....between staying with his family or working abroad.

a- inquiry b- lesson c- question d- choice

21- He hurt himself when he fell.....the ladder into the grass.

a- on b- off c- in d- about

22-She should plant a lot of trees to.....the amount of carbon dioxide.

a- reduce b- increase c- enlarge d- refuse

23- His employer is pleased with him as his work is always.....

a- organised b- order c- system d- organise

24- I know that he will behave.....and responsibly.

a- strangely b- cowardly c- morally d- badly

25- She is studying German language and.....

a- literature b- politeness c- sculpture d- furniture

26- Many poor families just sit in front of the TV for.....

a- discussion b- education c- entertainment d- athletics

27- I thanked him for.....me from an embarrassing situation.

a- inhibiting b- preventing c- rescuing d- racing

28- After school, he wants to.....the Faculty of Commerce!

a- Join b- connect c- contact d- attach

29- If you would like to be a.....of the club, please fill in this form.

a- number b- member c- person d- servant

30- the information about the Olympic Games is freely.....on the internet.

a- permit b- allow c- available d- load

Student's Book - Workbook - Longman Exercises - Previous Exams:

31- My brother is very.....He went to Cairo University and then Oxford.

A – good – educated

b- well-educated

c- Well – education

d- better-education

32- We are having aat school next week about ways of reducing global warming.

A- performance

b- book

c- show

d- debate

33- For some people reading and watching films are forms of.....

a- going out

b- escapism

c- freedom

d- forgetting

**34- In the past, many English children studied at school.
Now most schools teach modern languages.**

a- classes b- classical c- classics d- classic

**35- The Prisoner of Zenda was ready for.....a few months
after Anthony. Hope thought of the idea.**

a- published b- publicity c- publication d- publish

**36- Novels are usually works of.....but they are often based
on real life.**

a- fiction b- fictional c- fact d- reality

37- His first novel was.....in 1890.

a- published b- seen c- spread d-sewn

**38- Films and books can sometimes help people to.....from
their worries.**

a- escapism b- escape c- escapee d- escapist

39- My brother had a good.....he went to one of the best universities.

a- educate b- education c- educated d- educator

40- You can see a lot of.....architecture in Greece and Rome.

a- classic b- classics c- classical d- classes

**41- Although everyone in my family works very hard, we aren't
a.....family.**

a- wealth b- poorly c- wealthy d- poor

**42- In Britain, children.....primary school between the ages
of 5 and 11.**

a- go b- intend c- visit d- attend

43- The.....of Queen Elizabeth took place in 1952.

a- publication b- coronation c- establishment d- foundation

44- Nobody has the.....to steal things from other people.

a- rite b- fight c- right d- permit

45-.....were usually made from stones to stop attackers from breaking in.

a- Hotels b- Prisons c- Mountains d- Castles

46- Some twins are more.....than others.

a- like b- alike c- same d- different

47- Soha is so excited; her mother was invited.....the Queen of Spain's coronation

a- to pretend b- to go c- to intend 'd- to attend

48-I am sa glad to have another.....to hear Dr Shaimaa speaks.

a- accident b- progress c- occasion d- advance

49- All is enjoying reading the English.....Right now he's reading Charles Dickens.

a- classic b- classics c- class d- classical

50- Sally argues her points well and backs them with evidence. She'd be very good at.....

a- debate b- fight c- quarrelling d- war

51- Oh, I'm not ready yet. Could you wait a.....of minutes?

a- twice b- double c- pair d- couple

52- The lawyer argued that his cleric.....had been violated. انتقصت- انتهكت

a- grades b- fame c- rights d- fights

53- If you like stories, you'd probably prefer.....

a- fraction b- fiction c- fictional d- fractional

54- For me, reading is a form of..... in which I can forget what's going on around me.

a- escapism . b- escape c- freedom d- liberty

55- Jimmy should run for parliament. He gets along with everyone and he likes.....

a- politician b- policy c- political d- politics

56- My uncle is very.....so he never has to worry about money.

a- healthy b- wealth c- wealthy d- poor

57- Oliver twist is a.....character created by Charles Dickens in 1838.

a- fictional b- familiar c- historical d- critical

58- He takes after his father. They look very much.....

a- alike b- similar c- like d- different

59- A/ An.....is a ceremony in which somebody officially becomes a king.

a- occasion b- debate c- organisation d- coronation

60- The Prisoner of Zenda.....in the nineteenth century.

a- took part b- took run c- took place d-took from'

61- Movies are a form of.....for many people because they can get them away from the world of life.

a- classicism b- escapism c- criticism d- enthusiasm

Find mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly;

1- She works like a nurse in Heliopolis Hospital.

2-My uncle was one of the champions of 1973 war. He got a medal.

3- Sherlock Holmes was a fiction detective invented by Sir Aurther Conan.

4- Nobody has the fight to steal things from other people.

5- My brother is a good-educated man. He has studied in different fields of science.

6- A competition is an organised discussion on an important subject.

7- Co-operation is a ceremony in which somebody officially becomes a king or a queen.

8- My brother is a member of the Parliament. He is a politics.

9- Some people believe that Tutankhamun died after he fell on his horse.

10- Rudolf Elphberg was hijacked by his younger brother Michael.

11- The World Cup takes part every four years.

12- A buyer speaks f oh people in the court.

13- Birth and marriage have special services.

14- The thieves stole all the credit cards that belong for my father.

15- Although he is wealth, he is a miser.

16- A delegate is an organised discussion on an important subject.

17- The police arrested him and put him in place.

18- I have always liked reading adventurous stories.

19- The meeting was well-organising and exciting.

20- It's a similar film that this channel showed last year.

Translation

A) Translate into Arabic;

World civilization owes a great deal to the Arabs. This is a fact universally acknowledged. The Arabs translated the Greek works and made their own contributions in every field of knowledge. Western scholars were influenced by the contributions made in the field of chemistry, mathematics, astronomy and medicine.

B) Translate into English :

- ١- ان الخيال العلمى عادة ما يكون محاولة جادة للكتابة عن شكل الحياة فى المستقبل او فى عالم آخر.
- ٢- لقد وضعت الحكومة خطة لتطوير الاقتصاد المصري وتحريره من كل ما فيه من عيوب.
- ٣- ان مهرجان القاهرة الدولى للكتاب الذى يقام فى القاهرة كل عام يعتبر مهرجانا ثقافيا رائعا.
- ٤- يسافر شبابنا للخارج لاكتساب الخبرة والمعرفة والمعلومات التى تفيدهم فى مستقبلهم.

IMPROVE YOUR TRANSLATION SKILL .

civilization	حضارة	contributions	اسهامات
festival	كهرجان	defects	عيوب
community	مجتمع	rights	حقوق
citizen	مواطن	welfare	رفاهية
individual	فرد	democracy	ديمقراطية
unity	وحدة	freedom	حرية
standard	مستوى	stability	استقرار
economy	اقتصاد	prosperity	رخاء
equality	مساواة	justice	عدالة
budget	ميزانية	duties	واجبات

Grammar

Countable Nouns الاسماء المعدودة

* الاسم الذي تسبقه (a – an) في المفرد وتحذف في الجمع ونضيف S (الجمع)

OR ان يكون الجمع شاذا لا يأخذ S.

مفرد	جمع	مفرد	جمع
A pen: قلم	Pens	A child: طفل	Children
A watch: ساعة يد	Watches	A man: رجل	Men
A baby: رضيع	Babies	A foot: قدم	Feet
A leaf: ورقة	leaves	A mouse: فأر	mice

بعض الاسماء لها نفس الشكل في المفرد والجمع

a sheep	شاة	sheep	a means:	وسيلة	means
an aircraft	طائرة	aircraft	a species:	فصيلة- نوع	species

Countable Nouns :

1 - Can take singular or plural verbs

» The door is open.

» The doors are open.

2- With a/ an/ the/ my/ several عديد, etc.

» I paid the bill.

» This is my pen.

3- With (some - any - a lot of - many - few)

» I bought some apples.

» Few children came early.

Uncountable Nouns الاسماء غير المعدودة

* الاسماء التي لا تعد تعامل معاملة (المفرد) ولا جمع لها :

1- Food	الطعام	Meat- cheese- rice- sugar
2- Liquids	السوائل	Water- oil – coffee- petrol- milk- soup
3- Materials	المواد	wood - plastic - glass - paper
4- Abstract nouns	الاسماء المجردة	knowledge - beauty - freedom - justice
5- school subjects	المواد الدراسية	physics - chemistry - mathematics - history, etc.

6- Other nouns	أسماء أخرى	luggage- baggage - hair - news - information -advice - furniture - rubbish - litter - money -weather - machinery - accommodation
----------------	------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Uncountable Nouns:

1 - Take singular verb only

تأخذ دائما الفعل مفرد

» Gold is expensive.

» Milk comes, from cows.

2- Without a/ an/ one/ two, etc.

لا تأخذ (one /an/ a)

Water is good for you.

» Wood floats on water.

3- With (some - any- much - little - the - my)

يمكن يأتي قبلها

»I bought some coffee.

» We don't have much time.

Some / any / a lot of / much /many

Some + اسم (معدود – غير معدود)

في الجملة المثبتة والعرض والطلب

» Would you like some more tea?

» Can I get some information about tours, please?

Any + اسم (معدود – غير معدود) : في الجملة المنفية والاسئلة التي لا تعبر عن عرض او طلب

» He hasn't got any money / friends.

»Have you got any money / friends?

A lot of +

في الجمل المثبتة : اسم معدود – غير معدود

» He hasn't got much money.

Has he got much money?

Much + اسم لا يعد

في الاثبات والنفي والاسئلة :

» He hasn't got much money, -money?

Many +

» He hasn't got many friends.

» Has he got many friends?

countable		Un countable	Examples
√	All	√	- All cats are animals. - They have all the food.
√	Most	√	- Most students are absent. - I like most Egyptian food.
	Much	√	- I don't need much tea. - How much time have we got?
√	Many		- He doesn't need many shirts. - How many books did you buy?
√	A lot of	√	- There were a lot of people at the meeting. - There was a lot of rain.
√	Some	√	- Some of his books are exciting. - We need some butter.
√	Several		- Several buildings were damaged by the explosion.
	A little	√	- They have a little money, (قليل ولكن يكفي)
	Little	√	- They have very little money, (not enough لا يكفي)
√	A few		- I knew a few of people. = some قليل ويكفي للعدد
√	Few		- Few people, came to the meeting, so we, postponed it. قليل ولا يكفي
√	none	√	- None of the trains is/ are going to Assuit. لا احد - None of the information given to me was helpful. لا شيء

Special Cases حالات خاصة

* بعض الاسماء التي لا تعد يمكن ان تسبقها الاداة a/an اذا جاء قبلها الصفة.

We had a wonderful lunch yesterday.

* بعض الاسماء يمكن ان تعد او لا تعد حسب المعنى مثل :

paper- glass - coffee- time- cold - light- orange- hair- iron- chicken

Paper	
- I'd like some writing paper.	(ورق الكتابة – لا يعد)
- I'm going to buy a paper.	جريدة
Glass	
-The window is made of unbreakable glass.	(الزجاج – لا يعد)
- Would you like a glass of water?	كوب
Coffee	
- Have you got any coffee?	قهوة (مشروب)
- Could I have two coffees? (2 cups of coffee)	فنجان او كوب من القهوة
Time	
- Don't hurry. There's a plenty of time.	الوقت
- He went to London three time.	مرات
Cold	
- Don't go out in the cold without a coat	البرد عموما
- I've got a bad cold.	نزلة البرد
Light	
- The light is very strong. It hurts my eyes.	الضوء
- You should turn off the lights.	اضواء (مصابيح – لمبات)

Orange	
- I don't like orange. I prefer red.	اللون البرتقالى
- There are two oranges on the table.	برتقال
Hair	
- I've got a hair in my mouth.	شعرة a single hair
- There's much hair on your shoulder.	شعر a lot of hair
Iron	
- This table is made of iron.	الحديد (لا يعد)
- She bought an iron yesterday.	مكواة
Chicken	
Do you like chicken?	(لحم الدجاج chicken meat)
- He bought two chickens.	(الدجاج the animals)

ملاحظة :

* بعض الكلمات يمكن ان تكون غير معدودة اذا استخدمت بمعنى عام وتعتبر معدودة اذا تحدثنا عن انواعها وعددها مثل : (Fruit - fish - cake – food)

» Ripe fruit is ready to eat.	» Peaches and apples are delicious fruits.
» Fish is my favourite food.	» Fresh water fish are caught in rivers and lakes.
Would you like some cake?	» She was making a cake for Peter's birthday.
» The food is cooked by my mother	» Old people cannot digest certain foods.

* تستخدم كلمة (school) غير معدودة عند استخدامها للتعبير عن مكان الدراسة وتستخدم معدودة اذا عبرنا بها عن المدرسة كمبنى:

» My brother goes to the school by bus every day.

» The government built a school in our village last year.

ادوات التجزئة Partitives

يمكن تحويل الاسماء التى لا تعد الى اسماء تعد كالاتى:

* باستخدام (bit – piece) كألفاظ تجزئة عامة.

»I'd like a piece (a bit) of information.

»I'd like two pieces (bits) of information.

* باستخدام الفاظ تجزئة لنشير الى كميات اكثر تحديدا ونستخدم مع بعض الكلمات ولا نستخدم مع غيرها مثل:

(sheet - a loaf - a bottle - a slice - a cup - a pair - a bar - a jar)

a sheet of paper - a loaf of bread - a slice of meat - a cup of tea - a

pair of shoes - a bar of chocolate - a jar of jam

وعند الجمع نجمع لفظ التجزئة ولا نجمع اسم المادة.

two sheets of paper - two pairs of shoes - two jars of jam - two

loaves of bread - two slices of meat - three pair of shoes

اسم الجمع collective Noun

بعض الكلمات التى تشير الى مجموعات يمكن ان يستخدم معها فعل مفرد او جمع :

Team	فريق	Gang	عصابة	Company	شركة
Committee	لجنة	Staff	هيئة العاملين	Crowd	جمهور
Family	عائلة	Army	جيش	Navy	البحرية
Population	سكان	Crew	طاقم (طائرة-سفينة)	Government	الحكومة
Class	فصل	Group	جماعة		
couple	زوجان	University	جامعة		

– هنا الكلام عن العائلة كوحدة واحدة » My family is a happy one.

– هنا نقصد كل افراد العائلة » The family are travelling to London tonight.

ملاحظات هامة

لاحظ اننا نستخدم فعل جمع مع : (Police- people- cattle)

- *The police are looking for the bank robbers.
- * The people in the city have strange customs.
- * The cattle on this farm are fed organically.

* نستخدم فعل جمع دائما مع الكلمات الزوجية (اسم يتكون من جزئين) مثل :

Glasses	نظارة	Jeans	جينز	Pyjamas	بيجامة
Scissors	مقص	Trousers	بنطلون	Binoculars	نظارة معظمة
Shorts	شورت	Scales	ميزان		

- My jeans are dirty. Take them to the laundry, please.
- My glasses were broken yesterday
- العبارات الدالة على الكمية والمبالغ المالية والزمن والثمن والمسافة والوزن ودرجات الحرارة تعامل معاملة المفرد مع الفعل:
- Ten million pounds is a lot of money. (مبالغ مالية)
- Fifty litres of petrol fills my car. (كمية)
- Five kilometers is a long way to walk if you are carrying a heavy bag. (مسافة)
- Two hours is a long time to wait. (زمن)
- Fifty degrees is a very high temperature. (درجة حرارة)

ولكن لاحظ اننا نقول :

*Three one-pound coins are on the desk. ثلاث عملات معدنية من فئة الجنيه.
 * بعض الاسماء المنتهية بحرف (S) مثل الالعاب الرياضية والمواد الدراسية يستخدم معها دائما فعل مفرد:

athletics	العب قوى	politics	السياسة	gymnastics	العب الجمباز
mathematics	الرياضيات	economics	علم الاقتصاد	physics	الفيزياء

- Mathematics was my best subject at school.
- Economics is the science of economy and financial matters.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)
Countable Nouns	Uncountable Nouns	Pair Nouns	Group Nouns	Look plural Nouns	Always plural Nouns
(فعل مفرد او جمع)	(الفعل مفرد)	(الفعل جمع)	(فعل مفرد – او – جمع)	(فعل مفرد)	(فعل جمع)
تأخذ a /an / one A car an egg يأتى منها الجمع باضافة Book --- books Box - boxes story -- stories wife -- wives	الاسماء المعنوية /المجردة Freedom-evidence- beauty advice -hatred -courage damage - pride-experience justice- luck -progress pity - honesty - knowledge patience -confidence- love	Jeans trousers Shorts Shoes Pants Pajamas Scissors Slaves Classes Spectacles Scales tweezers	Family Team Army gang Staff Crew Navy Band Company Crowd Population Group Committee Government The audience The press The council The majority The cast	Statistics Classics gymnastics athletics Economics Physics Politics Genetics Maths News Dominoes Cards Electronics Measles	
(b جمع تكسير a child-children a mouse mice an oasis – oases a datum - data a tooth - teeth a crisis - crises a phenomenon ---- phenomena	اسماء المواد الخام Gold - ching - coffee silver - stone- crystal concrete - wood - iron	لا حـ ظ (إذا سبقتها) a Pair of) تصبح مفرد			
(c كلمات تنتهى بـ S فى المفرد والجمع a means -means a series -series	بعض الاطعمة Cheese - salt - meat yoghurt-butter- flour bread -sugar- chocolate	The new shoes are expensive			
(d نفس الشكل فى المفرد والجمع ولكن المعنى مختلف a hair - hair a fish – fish هذه الكلمات تستخدم معه Several-How many-many- few -any-some-a lot of-lots of	السوائل Milk -petrol - water juice-soup- oil-blood - wine - coffee lemonade	A pair of shoes is shown for sale		ملاحظة Hieroglyphics الهيروغليفية كلغة مفرد كحروف للغة جمع	

Uncountable Nouns	ملاحظات
المواد الدراسية واللغات History - Chemistry - English - Geography - Philosophy - French etc ...	<p>١- التعبيرات التي تشير إلى (كمية- مسافة- وزن- زمن - درجات الحرارة) في موقع الفاعل يتم التعامل معها كوحدة ويأخذ فعل مفرد.</p> <p>1- <u>Ten million pounds</u> is a lot of money (SB) 2- <u>Five litres of petrol</u> <u>fills</u> my car (SB) 3- <u>Two hours</u> <u>is</u> the time of the exam 4- <u>Five degrees</u> is a very high temperature (WB)</p>
كلمات متنوعة	
Furniture-behaviour- electricity-laughter- luggage-baggage- machinery-news- travel-mud-scenery- leisure-oxygen-grass- traffic-clothing- jewellery-money- music-equipment- carbon dioxide accommodation- rubbish-snow-material- air-lightning-	<p>٢- الـ Gerund في موقع الفاعل المفرد</p> <p>٣- لاحظ التالي :</p> <p>٤- لاحظ تغير الفعل في الحالات التالية حسب أداة الربط</p> <p>1) Both of + فعل جمع + اسم جمع * <u>Both of the girls are</u> good at English 2) Neither + فاعل أول + nor + فاعل ثاني * <u>Neither Omar nor his friends are</u> here 3) Either + فاعل أول + or + فاعل ثاني * <u>Either Ahmed or I am</u> giving the speech 4) <u>Salwa as well as I</u> <u>needs</u> help * (يتبع الفاعل الأول) + الفاعل الثاني + as well as + الفاعل الأول 5) <u>The rich are</u> responsible to help the society * (The+ صفة) + الفعل جمع (يقصد بها الجمع من هذه الصفة ويكون الفعل جمع) (Each + اسم) + الفعل بعدها مفرد * <u>Each girl has</u> a seat</p>
هذه الكلمات تستخدم معه How much-much- some-any-little-a little- a lot of-lots of	<p>٦- <u>Someone is</u> calling you * (يتبعها فعل مفرد) [Some one - every one - some body - every body - something]</p> <p>٧- *<u>There are</u> books on the table/there is a book on the table</p> <p>الجملة التي تبدأ بـ There الفعل فيها يتبع الاسم الذي يليه (مفرد او جمع)</p> <p>8) * <u>There are</u> books on the table/there is a book on the table</p>

Exercises on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Physics.....my favourite subject

a- are b-is c-have d- were

2- She earns.....money.

a- several b- few c- much d- many

3-Both of the criminals.....escaped.

a- is b- was c- have d- has

4- There is.....salt in this soup.

a- hardly any b- few c- many d- several

5- Don't worry, there's..... time.

a- a couple of b- a few c- many d- a lot of

6-My new jeans.....very expensive!.

a- is b- has c- were d- was

7-Everybody.....the answer.

a- know b- knows c- have known d- are known

8- Hard work as well as patience.....the only way to success.

a- is b- were c- have d- are

9- He hasn't got.....furniture in his house.

a- a lot of b- some c- any d- many

10- Fifty five pounds.....too much for this CD.

a- is b- were & have d- are

11- A number of citizens.....waiting to get the applications.

a- a few b- are c- a loaf of d- many

12- All the news.....goat.

a- are b- were c- have been d- is

27- After finishing....., he went to Oxford University.

a- school b- a school c- schools d- the school

28- Could I have..... coffee, please?

a- a b- an c- few d- many

29- Fifty degrees.....a very high temperature.

a- are b- is being c- were d- is

30-I don't like.....orange. I prefer red.

a- an b- a c- no article d- many

31- Maths.....my favourite subject when I was at school.

a- was b- were c- is d- are

32- Tm sorry. I haven't made.....change.

a- any b- many c- plenty d- a

33- We have two litres of milk..... that enough for today?

c- Are b- Was c- Is d- Were

34- One of the team members.....usually very aggressive.

a- are b- be c- were d- is

35- Can you count how.....grains of sand are on the beach?

a-much b-many c-some d-any

36-.....water has gone under this old bridge.

a- Many b- Plenty c- Lots d- Much

37- There is plenty of meat, but there is not.....bread.

a- plenty b- many c- much • d- a lot

38- Six people.....injured in a bus accident yesterday.

a- are b- was c- were d- is

39- The police.....arrested three suspects.

a- is b- have c- are d- has

40-I cook with.....little bit of olive oil and save the butter for my morning toast.

a-a b-an c-some d-the

41- How.....butter should you use?

a-many b-few c-much d-little

42- We need.....;..... fat in a healthy diet.

a-many b-any c-some d-a

43- The kid's bedroom..... upstairs on the 2nd floor.

a- it is b- are c- there are d- is

44- How.....information have you got from the story?

a- many b- much c- lots d- different

45- Five litres of petrol.....not enough for the trip from Cairo to Alexandra.

a- is b- are c- were d- had

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

1 -Hany bought iron in the sale at the electrical store.

2- This pair of trousers are too big for me.

3- I'm going to have my hairs cut tomorrow.

4- A lot of experience are needed to do this job.

5- Do you know some people around here?

6- Fifteen kilometres are a long way to run.

7-Fifty degrees are a very high temperature.

8- Fifty litres of petrol are enough for me to get out to work.

9- Have you got many information to tell?

10- How much books do you read a day?

11-I ate a jar of chocolate a minute ago.

12-I think that he has got too many responsibility.

13- Not much readers understand what they read.

14- There're many good school in the area.

15- The couple was married later that year. (SB)

16- My five- year-old-sister will start a school in September. (WB)

- 17- The police is going to get new uniforms. (WB)
- 18- Gymnastics refresh me more than playing tennis. (LM)
- 19- I haven't much patience with this sort of thing, but Sawsan has. (LM)
- 20- Lots of people want to spend their summer at the beach. (LM)
- 21- Politics were his favourite subject in university. (LM)
- 22- The good news are that Fatema had twin baby girls. (LM)
- 23- We have some cake, but we don't have much coffee. (LM)
- 24- Were there any problems with the mission? (LM)
- 25- Your face looks familiar. Haven't I seen you everywhere before?
- 26- Four years are a long time to spend away from family and friends.
- 27- Nasser Lake, one of the longest man-made lakes, is approximately 310 miles in length.

Language Functions

Showing surprise or interest:

التعبير عن الدهشة أو الاهتمام

Expressing Surprise		Expressing interest	
Really? I didn't know that!	أحقاً ذلك؟ لا أعرف ذلك!	How interesting!	يا له من أمر مثير!
Good heavens!	يا الهي	Is that right?	أحقاً كذلك!
How amazing!	كم هو مذهش!	That's very interesting	إنه أمر مثير!
That's unbelievable	إنه أمر لا يصدق	Really?	أحقاً ذلك!

Exercise on Language Functions

Respond to each of the following situations:

- 1- Your friend has joined a reading group. You want to know the number of people in the group.
- 2- Someone tells you that Anthony Hope wrote The Prisoner of Zenda in three months. You are very surprised by this.

3-You are told that Anthony Hope paid for the publication of his first novel himself. Express how you feel about this.

4- Someone tells you that Anthony Hope wrote more than 30 works of fiction altogether. You are interested but not surprised by this.

5- Your friend wants you to go to the stadium to watch a football match with him You are not interested in football.

6- Your friend tells you that Everest is almost 9 kilomteres high.

Advanced Translation

Translate into Arabic:

The main problem with eating and drinking in space is that there is no gravity. If you let go of a piece of food in a spacecraft, it will drift around, not fall to the floor. Water won't stay in a cup, it will float out and hang in the air. Food crumbs and drops of water could float around the spacecraft, make a mess or even damage the spacecraft itself.

Paragraph

Value of reading

Reading is very important. It is the food of the mind. Through reading, we benefit **يستفيد** from the experience of other people. Reading has a good effect on our behavior **سلوك**. It helps us to acquire good qualities. It enables us to understand the that we live in. It helps us to solve our problems in life.

Through reading we get a lot of information about the progress science and technology; By reading, we never feel Jonely. In fact books are the best friends, helps us to develop our characters widen horizons **افاق**. Mrs. Mubarak has the project "Reading for All. This project aims, at spreading **نشر** the habit of among young children. It also aims at developing the abilities **قدرات** of young to become good citizens in the future

Previous Exams 2003-2004

Translation

1) Exercise is a good way to get rid of the stress and frustration of the workplace. Consequently, people who exercise regularly feel better and do not get sick so often. This would benefit the society as a whole.

* التمرينات الرياضية هي وسيلة جيدة للتخلص من الاجهاد والاحباط بسبب العمل، وبالتالي فان الذين يمارسون التمرينات الرياضية يشعرون بتحسّن وغالباً لا يمرضون ويعود هذا النفع على المجتمع كله بصفة عامة.
١ - احب الذهاب الى الاوبرا للاستمتاع بالموسيقى الراقية.

* I like going to the Opera to enjoy fine music.

٢ - توفر الحكومة فرصاً للشباب للعمل وكسب الرزق وذلك بتقديم القروض لاقامة مشروعات صغيرة خاصة بهم.

* The government provides young people with opportunities for work and earning their living by offering them loans to set up their own small projects.

*Get rid of (v)	يتخلص من	* loans (n)	قروض
*frustration (n)	احباط	* Set up (v)	يقيم - ينشأ

2) Only the individual himself can develop his potentials. But, like any other living being, he needs an atmosphere of warmth to give him a feeling of inner security to express himself.

يعتبر الفرد نفسه فقط هو القادر على تنمية امكانياته المتاحة ، ولكنه مثل اى كائن حي آخر يحتاج الى جو من الدفء ليمنحه الشعور بالامان الداخلى لكي يعتبر عن ذاته .
١ - يجب ان نستخدم التكنولوجيا الحديثة فى جميع مجالات الحياة وخاصة الانتاج.

* Modern technology should be used in all aspects of life especially in the field of production.

٢ - لا يستطيع الانسان بأى حال من الاحوال ان يستغنى عن الماء والهواء ولولاهما لهلك جميع الكائنات الحية.

* Man can not, by any means, (do without/dispense with) water and air. Without them all living things would perish.

* potentials (n)	امكانيات	aspects (n)	مجالات
*inner security	الامان الداخلى	perish (v)	يهلك - يفنى

3)The 20th century will be remembered for its scientific revolution. Our age is the age of the atom space, and revolutionary medical achievements. Therefore conferences are organized to apply and make use of these achievements.

سوف يذكر القرن العشرون بسبب الثورة العلمية التي حدثت به، فعصرنا هو عصر الذرة والفضاء والانجازات الطبية الهائلة، تنظم المؤتمرات لتطبيق تلك الانجازات والاستفادة منها.

١- ان الجهود التي تبذل من اجل تحسين الصحة لا يمكن ان تتم بنجاح الا بتعاون الافراد مع الحكومة.

* The efforts exerted for improving health cannot be successful without the cooperation between the individuals and the government.

٢- تبذل مصر كل الجهود الممكنة ليسود السلام فى منطقة الشرق الاوسط.

* Egypt exerts all possible efforts so that peace may prevail in the Middle East area.

revolutions (n)	ثورة	exert (v)	يبذل
conference (n)	مؤتمر	pervail (v)	يسود- يعم

Test

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to each of the following situations:

1- Someone tells you that he has won two Olympic medals. You're surprised.

2- A friend asks you what you would like to be after you leave school.

3- Salem wants to know the best thing about your school.

4- You're asked why you'd like to be a civil engineer.

2- Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini- dialogues:

1- A: Can I help you?

B : Yes, I'd like to book a double room
for a week. How much is it?

A : It's 150 pounds per night.

Place:.....

Speaker A:

Speaker B:

Function:..

2- A: What's wrong with you?

B : I have a headache.

A : Ok. Let me examine you first.

Place:.....

Speaker A:

Speaker B:

Function:..

B- Language Functions

- Choose 3he correct answer

1- Films and books can sometimes help people to.....from their worries.

a- escape b- escaping c- escapist d- escapism

2- Anthony Hope's first novel was..... in 1890.

a- publish b- publishing c- published d- publication

3- Novels are usually works of....., but they are often based on real life.

a-fictional b-fictionalise c-fictions d-fiction

4- The Prisoner of Zenda.....Hope a lot of money.

a- took b- made c- let d- did

5- The king was kidnapped and.....in the castle.

a- looked b- booked c- blocked d- locked

6- My sister had a good.....She went to one of the best universities.

a- educating b- education c- educate d- well-educated

7- People believe he died after he fell.....his horse.

a- of b- with c- from d- off

8- Zenda is the town..... Elphberg is locked in the castle.

a- which b- where c- what d- that

9- Three days.....long enough for a good holiday.

a- weren't b- aren't c- -haven't been d- isn't

10- Fortunately, the news..... as bad as we expected.

a-wasn't b-weren't c-haven't been d-don't

11-I don't have.....furniture.

a- many b- much c- some d- a lot of

12- Did you bring.....oil?

a- any b- some c- an d- a

13-I have a new.....of shoes.

a- couple b- double c- twin d- pair

14- Do you think the people.....happy with the government.

a- are b- was c- is d- has been

15-.....the police know how the accident happened?

a- Does b- Is c- Was d- Do

16- Money.....the root of all evils.

a-are b-have been c-has d-is

**4- Find the mistake in each of the following sentences. then
Write them correctly.**

1- Hope wrote short stories to magazines.

2- The amazing thing about this book was how quick he wrote it.

3- Is a fiction story true or not?

4- Our luggage are searched carefully.

5- Much people don't have enough to eat.

6- Athletics are important to keep fit

B- Reading

5- Read the following passage and then answer the questions.

The basic information of education is to teach children knowledge, values, and pattern of behavior they will need in the adult world and will move from generation to another. Education is largely informal that occurs within the family. Family members teach children the values of their society as well as certain basic

skills, Parents may teach their children the skills of cooking, food gathering, hunting and fishing. By this way children learn the way of society by participating in adult activities.

Formal education which involves instruction by specific trained teachers who follow officially recognized policies, is called schooling. Schools fulfill this function through a set of courses that include such subjects as languages and literature, history geography, mathematics, science and foreign languages. Also schools develop the critical thinking of students' skills that are necessary to meet their needs in the future.

A- Answer the following questions:

- 1- What is the aim of education?
- 2- How will schools achieve their goals?
- 3-How do children learn from societies?

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The underlined word "their" refers to.....

- a- members b- parents c- students d- teachers

5- This passage mentioned.....types of education.

- a- one b- two c- three d- four

6- Read the following passage and then answer the questions:

Jackson likes to play and go on walks but hates getting a bath. Whenever he hears the water running in the tub, he hides behind the couch and growls at his owner, Jennifer. One day, he even ran out of the front door when it was bath time. He ran and ran until he found a huge mud puddle, and he jumped right into the water. He was completely covered in mud. He continued his journey away from home hoping to find other dogs in the neighbourhood that wanted to play. He did not find any dogs at the local park where Jennifer always walked him at night. He hoped he would at least find a cat to chase, but there were no dogs or cats in Jackson's path.

After an hour, Jackson started to get hungry and decided to walk back to the house. Jennifer was worried. She looked all over the neighborhood and had no luck finding him. When she got home, she heard a bark coming from the front door. That bark was familiar. It was Jackson! Before Jackson could eat his dinner, he had to face the bath he had run away from. This time, he listened and took his bath without any trouble. Soon Jackson was clean, but he needed a nap!

A- Answer the following questions:

- 1- Where did Jackson look for other dogs to play with?
- 2- Why did Jackson decide to return home after running away?
- 3- Who is Jennifer?

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4- What does the word "familiar" mean?
a- Well-known b- Strange c- Pleasant d- Unfriendly
- 5- What is the main idea of the passage?
a- Jennifer searches for her dog.
b- Jackson wants to find a friend to play with,
c- Jackson runs away to avoid taking a bath,
d- Jackson is a bad dog.

The Reader (The Prisoner of Zenda)

7-A) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Why has the Rassendyll family been interested in the Elphberg family?
- 2- Where does Rudolf Rassendyll tell Rose he is going walking?
- 3- Who does Rassendyll visit in Paris?
- 4- Why does Rudolf Rassendyll decide to stop at Zenda?

B) Read the flowing quotation, then answer the questions:

"He has always lived in Ruritania and he cares about the people like him .

- 1- Who says this? To whom?
- 2- What does the underlined pronoun "He" refer to?
- 3- Why do the Ruritarians like him?

C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

- 1- Rassendyll goes to Ruritania as an ambassador.
- 2- George Featherly works at the embassy in Ruritania.

Writing

8- Letter writing:

Write a reply to the following letter:

Your name is Nader and you live at 16 Ahmed Said Street, Abbassia, Cairo.

Dear Nader,

How nice to write to you again after so long. I have finished my final exams Now I'm free. I'm thinking of going to Hurghada this year. What about you?

Please, tell me your plans for the summer holiday. Please, write soon.

Yours, Hazem

9- A) Translate into Arabic:

Escapism stories are. stories that make us forget about our worries troubles. They take us to the world of imagination and thinking. They are the fictional stories that are not real or true.

B) Translate into English:

١ - ان قضية اصلاح التعليم من اخطر القضايا التي تواجه المجتمع المصري.

٢ - القصة رائعة جدا لدرجة انى لا يستطيع ان يضعها جانباً.

Unit (3)

Energy

Listening Text

Interviewer	Doctor Zaki, I've heard that we get energy from rocks under the earth. Could you explain how for our listeners?
Dr. Zaki	Yes, of course. We get energy from the heat inside the earth. This is known as geothermal energy. "Geo" means earth and "thermal" means heat.
Interviewer	But rocks are cold, aren't they?
Dr. Zaki	Not all rocks are cold. Below the surface of the earth, the pressure is so great that rocks are in a very hot, liquid form. We say that these rocks are molten.
Interviewer	I see.
Dr. Zaki	The molten rock heats underground lakes of water. Sometimes, steam is produced like this. When the hot water comes up through a hole in the earth's surface, that's when we get hot springs.
Interviewer	Is this like the hot water that comes up in the Siwa Oasis?
Dr. Zaki	That's right.
Interviewer	That's very interesting. But I don't understand how we can use energy from these molten rocks.
Dr. Zaki	Well, using today's technology, we drill deep below the earth's surface into the underground lakes of hot water. This water is then pumped to the surface and is heated again to make steam.

	The steam is then piped to a power station where it is connected to machines which produce electricity.
Interviewer	That's incredible. So we do this already?
Dr. Zaki	Yes. There are geothermal power stations that produce as much energy as two large coal power stations.
Interviewer	Well, doctor, thank you for talking to us about this very interesting subject.
Dr. Zaki	It's been a pleasure.

a) Answer the following"-

1- What do the " geo" and " thermal" mean in the word geothermal ?

.....

2-How does the hot water reach the Earth's surface ?

.....

3-How does the hot water rich the power station ?

b) Choose the correct answer*. -

1-The rocks are hot inform because of the great pressure.

a) melt b) molten c) freeze d) frozen

2- We got hot.....when water comes through a hole in the Earth's surface

a) atoms b) fuel c) springs d) light

Vocabulary on Listening

below (adv)	اسفل	Oasis (n)	واحة (مفرد)
Coal (n)	فحم	Oases (n)	واحات (جمع)
come up (v)	يرتفع	Pipe (v)	يضخ بالانابيب
Connect (v)	يتصل بـ	pleasure (n)	سعادة- متعة
Connection (n)	اتصال	pleased (adj)	مسرور
Drill (v)	يحفر	power station (n)	محطة طاقة
drilling (n)	تنقيب - حفر	pressure (n)	ضغط- ثقل
electricity (n)	كهرباء	press (v) (n)	يضغط- ضغط

electrical - electric (adj)	كهربى (صفة)	produce (v)	ينتج
electrician (n)	كهربائى (شخص)	production (n)	انتاج
geothermal (adj)	طاقة حرارية ارضية	Product (n)	منتج - سلعة
Hole (n)	فتحة - ثقب	producer (n)	منتج (الشخص)
incredible (adj)	لا يصدق	productive (adj)	منتج (غزير الانتاج)
Lake (n)	بحيرة	Pump (v)	يضخ
Liquid (n)	سائل	springs (n)	ينابيع - عيون
liquefy (v)- liquefy	يمنع- يجعله سائلا	Steam (n)	بخار
molten (adj)	منصهر	subject (n)	موضوع
		surface (n)	سطح

Reading :

Energy

Nothing can live without energy. People, animals and plants need energy to live and machines need energy to work. Today, most of the energy we use still comes from fossil fuels like coal, oil and gas, which have been formed underground over millions of years. We called these non-renewable forms of energy because they can only be used. Because of this, we need to reduce our use of non-renewable fuel and use more renewable forms of energy like those from the sun, wind or geothermal energy.

For centuries, the wind has been used to sail ships and to pump water. Now it is used to produce electricity. Groups of wind turbines along to the Red Sea in Egypt generate large amounts of electricity. Water is also renewable form of energy. Huge quantities of water go through the High Dam at Aswan from Lake Nasser. This hydroelectric power supplies Egypt with a lot of its electricity. As well as being inexpensive to produce, this clean energy does not pollute the environment.

Other countries depend on nuclear power - power produced when atoms split. However nuclear power produces dangerous waste which must be stored for thousands of years before it is safe. Accidents at nuclear power stations are extremely dangerous to people's health and to the environment.

Energy from the sun is probably the best form of renewable energy. Scientists believe that the sun's energy will last for another five billion years. This energy can be captured and stored. It's important for us to save energy in our homes and workplaces in order to stop using up non-renewable sources of energy.

Answer The following :

1- How long have fossil fuel taken to form ?

.....

2-Why do we need to increase our use of renewable energy ?

.....

3-In what to ways is hydroelectric power a good form of energy ?

.....

b) Choose the correct answer:-

1-Coal, gas and oil are all.....fuel

a) renewable b) atomic c) fossil d)nuclear

2-Wind turbines are used to.....electricity

a) connect b) switch off c) generate d) save

Vocabulary on Reading:

amounts (n)	كميات	nuclear (adj)	نووى
atom (n)	ذرة	oil (n)	نפט زيت
atomic (adj)	ذري	pollute (v)	يلوث
capture (v)	يأسر	pollution (n)	تلوث
centuries (n)	قرون	probably (adv)	من المحتمل
come from (v)	يأتى من	quantities (n)	كميات
energy (n)	طاقة	renewable (adj)	متجدد
energetic (adj)	نشيط -لديه طاقة	renew (v)	يجدد
environment (n)	البيئة	safe (adj)	امن
environmental (adj)	بيتي	safety (n)	امان- سلامة

extremely (adv)	للمغاية – جدا	sail (v) ~ "	يبحر
form (v)	يشكل	sources (n)	مصادر
formation (n)	تكوين	split (v)	يشطر - ينشطر
fossil fuels (n)	وقود حفري	splitting (n)	انشطار - انقسام
gas (n)	غاز	store (v)	يخزن
generate (v)	يولد	supply (v)	يمد - يزود
generation (n)	جيل	supplies (n)	امدادات
health (n)	صحة	turbines (n)	توربينات
healthy (adj)	صحي	use up (v)	يستنزف - يستهلك
hydroelectric (adj)	كهرومائي	waste (v)	يضيع - يهدر
inexpensive (adj)	رخيص	wasteful (adj)	مبذر
last (v)	يدوم - يستمر	workplace (n)	مكان عمل
non-renewable (adj)	غير متجدد		

Critical Thinking & Communication:

affect (v)	يؤثر على	partner (n)	شريك
effect (n)	تأثير	price (n)	سعر
cooperation (n)	تعاون	run out [of] (v)	ينفذ
damage (v) (n)	يتلف - تلف	spelling mistakes (n)	اخطاء املائية
increase (v)	يزيد	survey (n)	استطلاع رأي - مسح
instead of	بدلا من	switch off (v)	يغلق
Sighting (n)	اضاءة - نور		

Workbook

Blades (n)	شفرات	push (v)	يدفع - يضغط
Bury (v)	يدفن	rubbish (n)	قمامة
Conclusion (n)	خاتمة - استنتاج	pass (v)	يمر - يعبر
Dam (n)	سد	speed (n)	سرعة
Disappoint (v)	يحبط	turn into (v)	يتحول الى
Inconvenient (adj)	غير ملائم	unfortunately (adj)	بسوء الحظ

juice (n)	عصير	unpaid (adj)	غير مدفوع- مجاني
materials (n)	مواد	waves (n)	امواج
Raw materials (n)	مواد خام	wind (n)	رياح
Non-fiction (n)	واقع	windy (adj)	عاصف
metal (n)	معادن		

Definitions

atom	ذرة	the smallest part that a substance can be divided into
Fossil	الوقود الحفري	fuel made from animals or plants that lived millions of years ago
Generate	يولد	to produce electricity, power, heat, etc.
Hydroelectric	كهرومائي	using water power to produce electricity
Liquid	سائل	a substance such as water which flows, and isn't solid or gas
Molten	منصهر	molten metal or rock is liquid because it is extremely hot
Nuclear	نووي	using the energy that is produced when an atom is split to another atom
Pipe	يضخ بالانابيب	to send a liquid or gas through a pipe to another place
Power station	محطة طاقة	a building where electricity is made
Pressure	ضغط	the force that a liquid or gas has when it is inside a container or place; the force produced when pressing against something
Renewable	متجدد	can be replaced at the same speed it is used
Waste	نفاية	materials that are left after you have used something, which you want to get rid of because you no longer need them
Wind turbine	تربينه الرياح	a tall structure with parts are turned by the wind, used for making electricity

Phrases & Expressions & Idioms:

(be) connected to	موصول بـ	in an open place	في مكان مكشوف
cheap to produce	رخيص انتاجها	it's been a pleasure	سعدت كثيرا
coal-fired furnace	فرن يعمل بالفحم	make good use of	يحسن استغلال
come up through	يصعد لاعلى من خلال	make notes	بدون ملاحظات

do a survey into	يقوم بعمل استطلاع - مسح	over millions of years	عبر ملايين السنين
do damage	يتلف (يسبب تلفاً)	produce clean energy	ينتج طاقة نظيفة
energy-saving habits	عادات توفير الطاقة	using today's technology	باستخدام تكنولوجيا اليوم
generate/ make/ produce electricity	يولد كهرباء	using up	استنزاف - استهلاك
		geothermal plant	مصنع يعمل بالطاقة الحرارية

Notes on Vocabulary

{1}

Energy

Power

energy

(الطاقة هي القدرة على ان تعمل عملا بدون تعب)

(القوة التي تأتي من الكهرباء او الفحم او البترول وتستخدم لتسيير الآلات)

»e.g. Children are usually full of energy.

»e.g. Most of the energy used nowadays comes from fossil fuels.

power

قوة محركة - شدة - سلطة - نفوذ

» The ship was helpless against the power of the storm.

»He was greedy for power and money

{2}

Outdoor

outdoors

indoor

indoors

Outdoor (adj) + noun بالخارج- خلوى (خارج الاماكن المغلقة) يأتي بعدها اسم

» I prefer outdoor games such as football and hockey.

* **outdoors (adv)** (بالخارج (خارج الاماكن المغلقة).. تصف فعلا ولا يأتي بعدها اسم

»Football is my favourite game. I play it outdoors.

* It's a very warm evening so why don't we set outdoors?

* **indoor (adj)**. بالداخل (داخل الاماكن المغلقة).. يأتي بعدها اسم

The sun damages his skin so he prefers indoor jobs.

* **indoors (adv)**. بالداخل (داخل الاماكن المغلقة).. تصف فعلا ولا يأتي بعدها اسم

*It's raining heavily. Let's stay indoors.

* Oh dear. I've left my sunglasses indoors.

{3} Another Other Others the other the others

*another + رقم او مفرد + تمييز

» He made another mistake. اسم مفرد

» My father gave a pocket money, the he gave me another 5 pounds.

* Other + جمع

» The pens are on the desks while other pens are anew the floor.

Other + فعل

» Some students love art calss but others don't.

The other + مفرد/ جمع

» I saw the other book/ books you recommended.

* او اداة استفهام { some { one
Any { body
Every { thing
No } + else

* What else can I do for you ?

* No body else saw the accidents.

{4} It takes + time + to + inf انها تأخذ + مدة زمنية لى

* It takes millions of years to make fossil fuels

* It takes three hours to go to Alex.

It takes + object + time + to + inf

* It takes me three hours to go to Alex.

{5} Melt Molten

» melt (ed- ed) (ice/ chocolate/ butter...) يذوب- يرق- يلين

- When we got up in the morning, the snow had melted

Molten (metal/ rock/ lead) (الرصاص) منصهر فى درجة حرارة عالية

» If you make rock or metal very hot, it becomes molten.

alright

اتفقتنا - حسناً

{6} electric

electrical

Electric (صفة قبل الأشياء التي تحتاج للكهرباء لكي تعمل أو تحمل الكهرباء)

» (car –light- guitar- oven – kettle- current- cable.....).

electrical

كهربى (كلمة عامة لوصف الأشخاص وأعمالهم والأشياء التي تستخدم أو تنتج الكهرباء)

» (electrical equipment – electrical engineer- electrical goods)

My father's company imports electrical goods.

{7}

Let

allow

permit

* let +inf. يسمح – يدع (بعدها المصدر)

* He let me use the computer.

* allow + to + inf. يسمح - يدع

* Permit + to + inf يسمح – يدع

* We were not permitted to enter the area during the investigation

{8}

Made of

Made from

Made in

Made by

***V to be + made of** مصنوع من مادة لم تتغير بعد التصنيع

» The handbag is made of leather.

***V. to be + made from** مصنوع من مادة أو أكثر تغيرت بعد التصنيع

» Butter is made from milk.

Made in +

صنع فى مكان أو بلد التصنيع

» The T.V is made in Japan.

Made by + اسم أو جنسية الصانع

The bed was made by a French carpenter

{9}

Split

Spill

Spell

* split split split

» the children split into Three groups.

*spill spilt spilt

» The little girl spilt water on the floor.

Spell spelled/spelt spelled/ spelt

» can you spell your name?

{10} Run out Run out of

*run out ينفذ وينتهي

» The gas in my car ran out.

*run out of "شيء" يستهلك تماما او ينفذ ما لديه من كذا

We ran out of salt. We need to buy some.

{11} Other than Rather than

*other than بالاضافة الى

» She learnt two languages other than English.

*rather than افضل من او بدلا من

We should recycle most of our wastes rather than throw them away.

Prefixes

البادئة للكلام : هي مقاطع تضاف الى بداية الكلمة لتكوين كلمة جديدة وتغير احيانا معنى الكلمة او تحولها الى العكس

Happy —→ unhappy zero —→ sub-zero

بادئة تعطي عكس الكلمة

Prefix	Examples			
dis	disagree	يعترض	disappear	يختفى
if	illegal	غير قانوني	illiterate	امي (غير متعلم)
im	impolite	غير مؤدب	impossible	مستحيل
in	inefficient	غير كفء	inexpensive	رخيص

ir	irregular	شاذ	irresponsible	غير مسئول
non	non-renewable	غير متجدد	non-nuclear	غير نووى
un	unhappy	غير سعيد	unreal ,	غير حقيقي

بادئة تغير معنى الكلمة

Prefix	Examples				
Anti	Against	antibiotic	مضاد حيوى	antivirus	
Bi	two	bilingual	ثنائى اللغة	Biannual	
Bio	life	biochemistry	الكيمياء الحيوية	Biology	
mid	middle	midnight	منتصف الليل	Midyear	
mono	one	monosyllabic	احادى المقطع	monolingual	
multi	many	multinational	متعدد الجنسيات		
Over	too much	overweight	زائد فى الوزن		
pre	before	Prehistoric	قبل التاريخ		
re	again	recycle	بعد التصنيع	Reconsider	
sub	lower than	sub-zero	تحت الصفر	submarine	
tri	three	triangle	مثلث	Tricycle	
under	below	underground	تحت الارض	underline	

Confusing words for choices and find the mistakes:

Oil petroleum	زيت-بترو-نفط بترول-	petrol	بنزين
split/split/split	يقسم - ينقسم	spill/spilt/spilt	يصب- يسكب (سائل)
		spell/spelled	يتهجى
coal	الفحم	cool	بارد
last	يستمر- يدوم	list	قائمة- يضع فى قائمة
surface	سطح (الارض- البحر)	roof	سطح (منزل)
health	الصحة	wealth	الثروة
pollute	يلوث	populate	بعمر - يسكن
store	يخزن	score	يسجل
supply... with	يزود (يوفر)..ب	supply ... for	يزود (يوفر)..ل
coronation	تتويج	co-operation	تعاون
run out	ينفذ (لايتبعه مفعول)	run out of	يستنفذ- يستهلك (يتبعه مفعول)

Opposites

dependence	اعتماد	independence	استقلال
huge	ضخم	small	صغير
inexpensive	رخيص	expensive	غال
last	يدوم - يستمر	finish	ينهي
liquid	سائل	solid	صلب
reduce	يقلل	increase	يزيد
renewable	متجدد	non-renewable	غير متجدد
safe	أمن	unsafe	خطير- غير امن

Preposition :

For			
supply ... for	يوفر ... لـ	important for	مهم لـ ...
explain for	يوضح لـ	last for ...	يستمر لمدة...
To			
talk to (about)	يتحدث لـ (عن)	advantage to	ميزة لـ..
(be) piped to	ينقل بالانابيب الى	(be) pumped to	يضخ الى

Of			
a form of	شكل من	instead of	بدلا من
With			
Provided .. With	يمد بـ	Supply..... with	يمد بـ
Into			
turn into	يتحول الى	drill into	يحفر في
Out			
run out		Find out	
Off		Up	
turn off	يطفىء (جهازا وكهرباء)	Use up	يستهلك
switch of			

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or

1- This TV set should be.....to the power supply.

a- contacted b- connected c- related d- communicated

2-They are.....for oil in the area.

a- going b- tunneling c- drilling d- asking

3-Switch off the.....before you do the repairs.

a- radio b- television c- mobile phone d- electricity

4-Hydroelectric power.....Egypt with a lot of electricity.

a- presents b- introduces c- supplies d- gives We

5-We get.....energy from the heat inside the earth.

a-geothermal b-solar c- nuclear - d-hydroelectric

6-We get hot.....when the hot water comes up through a hole in earth's

a- water b- springs c- food d-oases

7-.....was rising from the coffee.

a- Water b- Oil c- Steam d- Petrol

8- A computer can store a vast.....of information.

A – pile b- masses c- quality d- amount

9-When.....split, we get nuclear power.

a- atoms b- gases c- liquids d- rocks

10- Most of the energy used today in homes and industries comes from

a- the sun b- fossil fuels c- atoms d- the wind

11- Most of the men had been either killed or..... in the fight.

a- murdered b- captured c- died d- hijacked

12-They discovered paintings dating from the 17th

A – year b- millennium c- century d-decade

13-We need-to provide a safe working.....for all workers in the factory.

a- health b- conditioning c- air d- environment

14- You can get the medicine in the..... of a spray or as a tablet.

a- form b- photo c- picture d- shape

15-The thieves abandoned the stolen car when it ran out of.....

a- money b- fuel c- power d- force

16- The stolen car was abandoned when it ran.....fuel.

a- over b- out c- out of d- after

17- 13% of Egypt's electricity is.....by hydroelectric power.

a-charged b-performed c-done d-generated

18- It's a very warm evening so why don't we sit.....?

a-indoor b-indoors c- outdoor d- outdoors

19- "Geo" in geothermal means.....

a- earth b- heat c- life d- again

20-I'd like to extend my stay in this hotel as it is clean and.....

a- wealthy b- expensive c- inexpensive d- costly

21- Do you think this weather will.....till the weekend?

a- become b- go c- stand d- last

22- Just..... the cake into three pieces and leave one piece for Adel.

a- split b- share c- do d- bake

23-The villagers...the Nile when they wash their animals in its water.

a- save b- pollute c- clean d- drink

24- The police have refused to reveal the.....of their information.

a- origin b- infinitive c- source d- foundation

25- We are a long way ahead. Wait for the.....to come.

a- else b- another c- others d- other

26- Saving energy stops.....up non-renewable sources of energy.

a- showing b- looking c- making d- using

**27-A.....is a large machine used for producing electricity
from the wind.**

a- wind tunnel b- wind turbine c- wind tower d- windward

28-Can't you fix this car now instead..... waiting until tomorrow?

a- from b- to c- on d- of

29- She is doing a..... into the habits of eating.

a- plan b- shopping c- book d- "survey

30- Some .people think that..... energy can be dangerous.

a- oil b- wind c- water d- atomic

31-It..... me three hours to write the report about the accident.

a- gave b- took c- had d- played

32-I'm feeling..... today. Let's go to the club and play tennis.

a- energetic b- energy c- power d- activity

33- Oil and water are two..... that don't mix.

a- metals b- solids c- characters d- liquids

34- Oil is..... from oil fields to the refinery.

a- drunk b- sold c- piped d- pulled

35-When you do not reuse plastic containers, you are very.....

a- dangerous b- wasteful c- careful d- good

36-Wind turbines aid in the..... of renewable energy.

a- generation b- building c- understanding d- recycling

37-The.....which is extracted from olives is used for cooking.

a- petrol b- oil c- petroleum d- gas

38- Some metals are heated in furnaces to be.....

a- molten b- frozen c- solid d- decayed

**Student's Book - Workbook - Longman Exercises -
Previous Exams:**

39- Water is the form of ice.

a- liquid . b- steam c- solid d- passive

40-You send a liquid or1 gas through a..... to move it to another place.

a- canal b- jar c- pipe d- hole

41-If you make rock or metal very hot, it becomes.....

a- dissolved b- molten c- heated d- melted

42- Electricity is produced in a/ an.....station.

a- energy b- power c- petrol d- gas

43-.....is the black fossil fuel from underground.

a- Coal b- Nuclear c- Geothermal d- Water

44-..... is the force produced when two things push against each other.

a- Force b- Energy c- Power d- Pressure

45- Water passing through a dam produces..... power.

a- nuclear b- geothermal c- heat d- hydroelectric

46- Modern wind.....are tall towers that are built where there is a lot of wind.

a- factories b- turbines c- plants d- stations

47- When atoms are split,.....energy is produced.

a- solar b- nuclear c- geothermal d- fossil

48- Wind is a type of..... energy.

a- non-renewable b- atomic

c- hydroelectric d- renewable

49- Geothermal energy comes from heat..... the earth's surface.

a- of the sun b- below c- above d- close to

50-Lava is..... rock that comes from a volcano like Iceland's Volcano.

a- hot b- cold c- molten d- melt down

51-Egypt is hoping to build some nuclear.....to produce electricity,

a- power stations b- power houses

c- power places d- powder stations

52- One of Egypt's main sources of revenue..... from fossil fuels.

a- follows b- comes c- becomes d- deletes

53-One concern of nuclear power stations is how to store the .dangerous.....

a- energy . b- water c- hydroelectricity d- waste

54- Huda is under a lot-of..... because she has exams comina up.

a- pressure b- power c- press d- pipe

55- Many people travel by..... or on foot to save energy.

a- car b- lorry c- taxi d- bicycle

56- Air conditioning..... the environment.
a-injures b- saves c- damages d- resolves

57- Coal, oil, and gas are..... forms of energy.
a- renewable b- sustainable c- non-renewable d- generated

58- Windmills are connected to turbines to.....electricity.
a- motivate b- radiate c- generate d- steam

59- For centuries, the wind has been used..... ships.
a- to sailing b- sailed c- sailing d- to sail

60- She is.....She speaks both Arabic and English.
a- monosyllabic b- literate c- monolingual d- bilingual

61- Coal, oil and gas are..... fuels, which have been formed under the ground millions of years ago.
a- energy b- electricity c- fossil d- waste

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

- 1-An atomic is the smallest part that a substance can be divided into.**
- 2- Energy from the sun can be arrested and stored.**
- 3- Geometry energy is the energy from heat in the earth.**
- 4- Hot Water comes in through a hole in the earth's surface.**
- 5- Hydroelectric power uses oil to generate electricity.**
- 6- A wind tower is a tall structure with parts that are turned by the wind, used for ticking electricity.**
- 7- I usually switch on the lights when I go to bed.**
- 8- Im making a survey into the causes of pollution.**
- 9- It makes five hours to go to Assuit by car.**
- 10-Nonrenewable energy will last forever.**
- 11- Recycling is another way to surf energy.**
- 12- Siwa Oases is characterized by being full of springs.**

- 13-Solar power is generated when atoms split or join together.
- 14-The function of the heart is to pipe blood around the body.
- 15- The hydroelectric power supplies Egypt from a lot of its electricity.
- 16-The meeting of the board listed for three hours.
- 17- The wind is used to build electricity.
- 18-There are two forms of energy; renewable and irrenewable.
- 19- Water is used to produce nuclear energy.
- 20- We had to go to a filling station as we ran out off petrol.
- 21- We have to introduce the use of electricity and water.
- 22- We should stop to waste our time.
- 23-"Thermal" in geothermal means energy.
- 24- Treasure is the force that a liquid or gas has when it is inside a container or place.
- 25- more people use renewable sources of energy, the faster they are used up.

Translation

A) Translation into Arabic:

- 1- There are many different forms of natural energy that give us light and power our homes and work. One of these forms is hydroelectric power, which is renewable source .of energy. It's cheap to produce and doesn't pollute the atmosphere.
- 2- It is said that television has destroyed the art of conversation and made people unhappy by forcing them to want things they don't need. On the other hand , it helps people to update their knowledge of the world affairs, as they can see current events in different parts of the world the moment they occur.

B) Translate into English :

- ١- لقد اثبت المواطن المصري انه يرفض الارهاب بكل صورته.
- ٢- لابد ان تتناسب ميزانية الاسرة بما تشمله من مأكّل وملبس ومأوى مع دخله.
- ٣- ان الطريقة التي يربي بها الوالدان اطفالهما تؤثر على حياتهم في المستقبل.
- ٤- تدفعنا مشكلات مصادر الطاقة التقليدية الى البحث عن تطوير مصادر الطاقة الحديثة.

TRANSLATION SKILL

art	فن	force	يجبر
update	يطور - يحدث	world affairs	شئون العالم
current events	احداث جارية	terrorism	الارهاب
suit	تتناسب	sources of energy	مصادر الطاقة
occur	يحدث	housing (shelter)	مأوى

Language Focus

المضارع التام 1- Present Perfect

Form التكوين	have / has + P.P	He has just come back. They've visited me.
Negative النفي	Haven't/hasn't+ P.P	They haven't bought the car yet.
Interrogative الاستفهام	Have + الفاعل P.P? Has + الفاعل P.P?	Have you phoned Ahmed? he finished his exams?
Passive المجهول	Have / has been + P.P	My cat has just been repaired.

Usage

1- For an action which began in the past and continues up to the present:

1- يعبر عن حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال قائم حتى الان

- * They have been friends for (20) years. (They are still friends)
- * He has worked in this company for ten months.
- * For an action which has recently finished and whose result is

2- يستخدم الحدث انتهى قريب واثاره واضحة فى الحاضر - visible in the present-

She has picked a lot of apples. (She has apples with her)

*- My wallet has been stolen. I don't have any money.

2- The present perfect is used with the following time expressions:

3- يستخدم لحدث بدأ فى الماضى وانتهى فى المضارع.

* I have just finished my homework.

3- For an action which happened at an unknown time in the past:

4- يستخدم لحدث تم فى وقت غير معروف فى الماضى (التركيز يكون على الحدث ووقت الحدث ليس مهما) (المهم هنا الحدث وليس زمن الحدث).

* My friend has broken his arm.

الكلمات الدالة عليه

For , since, already, yet, just, always, ever, so far, up till now, lately, recently, how long Over the years, ever since , during the past ten years, throughout history, etc.

Key words	Examples
Already بالفعل	We have already seen this film. Have you finished already?
Just حالا	I have just phoned my friend Omar.
Ever من قبل	Have you ever flown a plane?
Never مطلقا- ابدأ	She has never been to Turkey.
Yet, (حتى الان) النفى - السؤال	I haven't finished yet . Has your father left yet?
So far / up till now حتى الان	What have you done so far?
Lately , recently حديثا	Have you seen any good films recently / lately
Always دوما	She has always loved animals.
How long كم المدة	How long have you known Fatma?
For (duration) مدة	I have known Ahmed for five years.
Since نقطة بداية	They have been married since last April.

For (المألوفة)	a day / a month / a year	Since (الحلوفة)	he left schoi
	Weeks / months / years		Friday / Monday ايام
	several days / weeks / years		last June / April شهور
	2 hours		2000 رقم السنة
	ages / a season "موسم" / a moment / q while "لحظة" / fortnight "اسبوعين"		2 o'clock olcLu// yesterday his childhood
	a long time / a decade "عقد" ١٠ سنوات		lost week / last year
	the last week / year a أو بدأ بـ s مع كل ما انتهى بـ for تأتي		then ذلك الحين بدل (ماضى) بسيط

ملاحظات

١ - يأتي مع Just (فى التو او حالا) يعبر عن حدث اكتمل الان:

» I have just passed the exam

2 - يأتي مع for (لمدة) ليشير الى فترة زمنية كاملة ومع since ليشير الى بداية الحدث لنقطة الزمنية.

» I have written stories for 5 years (SB)

» I have enjoyed reading novels since I was a child (SB)

3- لاحظ استخدام "since" بدلا من "when" فى المثال التالي:

» I last ate fish when I was in Alexandria (Since)

» I haven't eaten fish since I was in Alexandria

» I last saw him when I was in Alexandria (Since)

» I haven't seen him since I was in Alexandria

يلاحظ أننا نحذف (when) ونضع (Since) ونطبق قاعدة Since بعدها ماضى بسيط وقبلها مضارع تام منفى للحفاظ على المعنى.

لاحظ التالي "ماضى بسيط" + since + مدة زمنية + It is

- » It is three weeks since I met Mona.
- » I haven't met Mono for three weeks
- » It is ages since I went to the cinema
- » I haven't gone to the cinema for ages

4- تستخدم already فى السؤال والثبات :

- » Twenty million people have seen the new film already. (SB)
- » I Have you already written the letter?
- » Yes, I have already written the letter?

5- تستخدم yet فى السؤال والنفي وتأتى فى آخر الجملة :

- » Have you finished the H.W yet?
- » No, I haven't finished the H.W yet.

لاحظ ان نفي جملة already هو (not yet)

- » she has already finished the house work ?
- » she has not finished the house work yet.

6- تستخدم ever فى الاستفهام وnever فى النفي :

- » Have you ever seen .the pyramids ?
- » I have never seen the pyramids.

7- تستخدم recently فى الاثبات وlately فى النفي ويظهر كلاهما فى السؤال :

- » haven't seen Mr. John lately?
- » The minister has opened a new hospital recently.
- » Have you played football lately/ recently ?

8- الفرق بين have gone to 3 have been to

- » Tom is not here. He has gone to London. ذهب ولم يعد. (have gone to)
- » Sally is at home. She has been to Paris. ذهبت ثم عادت. (have been to)

9- نستخدم for مع الماضى البسيط لتعني ان الحدث تم وانتهى

- » Mr. Omar worked in this company for twenty years = (now he is not working there.

10- تستخدم كلا من "up till now/ so far حتى الان" في الاثبات

» I have read three chapters so far / up till now.

11-تستخدم مع تعبيرات This is the first time /It's the second time,

»This is the first time Alaa has visited a European country.

المضارع التام المستمر. 2- Present Perfect Cont.

Form التكوين	have/has +been+ v+ ing	»He has been studying all night »They have been revising for the exam all week.
Negative النفي	Haven't / hasn't +been+ v+ ing	»They haven't been waiting for us.
Interrogative الاستفهام	Have + الفعل+ been+ v+ing?	»Have you been running?

يستخدم المضارع التام لحدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال مستمر حتى الان دون توقف " لم ينتهي بعد " Usage

»I have been reading this book for two hours

هذا يعنى :

1- I am still reading it

اننى لا زلت أقرأه

2- I haven't finished reading it yet

اننى لم انتهى من قراءته

3- Now I am reading it

اننى الان اقرأه

الكلمات الدالة عليه

*Since *for *all day *How long *all evening *all morning *still

»How long have you been smoking?

"fl»They have been Planning for the party since last week 't finshed yet.

»I have been trying to phone him for three hours but there is no answer.

الفرق بين المضارع التام والمضارع التام المستمر

The present perfect continuous for actions which began in the past and continue up to the present.

يتفق المضارع التام والتام المستمر فى انهما بدأ فى الماضى وما زالا مستمرين حتى الان.

- He has been a teacher since 1990 and he is still a teacher.
(Perfect simple)
- He has been working as a teacher since 1990 and he is still working as a teacher, (perfect cont)

ولكن المضارع التام المستمر يؤكد استمرار الحدث في المستقبل أي أنه لم يقف عند المضارع فقط

3- The present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط		
Form التكوين	He/ She/ It + Inf. + s/es/ies I/ They/ We/ You + Inf. المصدر	•My father watches TV every day. •Most children like ice cream
Negative النفي	He/ She/ It + doesn't + Inf. I/ They/ We/ You + don't+ Inf.	Mhmed doesn't play football. •My parents don't speak English.
Interrogative الاستفهام	Does + He/ She / it + Inf.? Do + I/ They/We/ You + Inf?	•Does Mariam like English? •Do you have a mobile phone?
Passive المجهول	am - is - are * p.p	•English is spoken all over the world.

Usage: الاستخدام

a) for repeated actions and daily routines: للأحداث المكررة والروتين اليومي

» She works in a bank.

» He takes the train to work every morning.

b) For general facts and laws of nature: للحقائق العامة وقوانين الطبيعة

» Egyptian people drink a lot of tea.

» Water boils at 100°C.

c) For timetables:

لجدول المواعيد المحددة

» The plane from Cairo arrives at 8:30.

d) For sports commentaries and narration: في التعليقات الرياضية وسرد أحداث الرواية

» Egypt kicks off, Abu Terika passes to Zidane. Zidane cuts inside.

» Then Rassendyll decides to return back and collect every soldier to attack Michael

e) To give instructions or direction: اعطاء التعليمات او الاتجاهات بدلا من صيغة الامر

» From here you cross the road, go through an iron gate and follow the pass east..

f) After time conjunctions (after / before / by the time / when....etc) بعد بعض الروابط الزمنية ليشير الى المستقبل
to refer to the future:

» After he finishes his homework, he will help you.

» By the time my father arrives, I'll have gone to sleep.

g) The present simple is used with following time expressions:

usually, often, always, sometimes, never, ever, rarely, seldom, frequently. generally, every day/ week/ month/ year, in the morning/ afternoon/ evening. night, at the weekend, on Fridays, etc...

» I visit my relatives on Mondays.

» I sometimes visit my relatives.

» He never tells lies.

» It seldom rains in Egypt.

(v- to be) قبل الفعل العادى وبعد (always/ usually/ never/ sometimes/ rarely) تستخدم

» He always (usually, sometimes, never) comes late.

» He is always (usually, sometimes, never) late.

عندما تكون (v-to be) فعل اساسي لا نستخدم بعدها فعلا آخر ولكن اسم او صفة

4- The present continuous Tense زمن المضارع		
Form التكوين	He/ She/ It + (is + v+ ing) They/ We/ You + (are + v+ ing) I + (am + v+ ing)	»My father is watching TV,now »They are reading at the moment
Negative النفي	He/ She/ It + (is <u>not</u> + v+ ing) They/ We/ You+ (are <u>not</u> +v+ ing) I + (am <u>not</u> + v+ ing)	»Listen ! she is not singing »I am not doing my H.W now
Interrogative الاستفهام	Are/ Is / Am + (الفاعل +v+ ing)?	»Are you doing anything now.

1- Usage. الاستخدام

يعبر زمن المضارع المستمر عن حدث مستمر (يقع لحظة الكلام الآن)

- » We are watching T.V now.
- » Look the bird is flying.
- » They are still studying English.

2-Key Words: الكلمات الدالة عليه

* Look *now *at the moment * listen *still * at present
*nowadays.

Notice

١- تضاعف الحرف الاخير اذا كان قبله حرف متحرك :

* hitting * running * stopping * beginning *swimming

٢- فى حالة اضافة " ing " الى فعل ينتهى بـ "e" نحذفها

Write → writing arrive → arriving

٣- لا يسمع المضارع المستمر مع الافعال التالية :

* Verbs of senses	→	see- hear - smell - notice
*Verbs of thinking	→	know- understand - agree
* Verbs of emotions	→	love- hate - like - care

Exercises on Grammar

1- Mariamplaying tennis since she was 8 years old.

a- was enjoying b-enjoyed c-will enjoy d-has enjoyed

2- Omar.....in this factory for about 15 years now.

a- has been working b-has worked c-had had d- had

3- I.....do the housework on Saturdays.

a- recently b-yet c-always d- already

4- please be quite! Ito the basketball scores.

a- am listening b-would listen c-listen d- listens

5- It rarely.....very Hot in Britain.

a- gets b-is getting c-has got d- got

6- An accident.....place on this bad road every day.

a- take b-takes c-is taking d- took

7- Metal.....If they are heated

a- expands b- expandc-is expandingd-has expanded

8-Physicsto us by Mr. Salama this year.

a- teach b-teaches c-are taught d- is taught

9-I.....my English H.W, right now.

a- do b- am doing c- doing d-done

10- It is more than three years since he.....to me.

a- writes b-wrote c-iswriting d-has written

11-We.....energy from the heat inside the earth.

a- are got b- get c- gets d- has got

12-I.....my English book and I am trying to find it.

a- am losing b- have lost c- lose d- was losing

13-The molten rock.....underground lakes of water.

a- are heated b- heat c- heats d- is heated

14-The train to Aswan.....at 6.30 am as usual.

a- has left b- would leave c- leaves d- is leaving

15- hefor a job since he graduated but he hasn't found a good one yet.

a-was looking b-has been looked c- has looked d-has been looking

16- Vegetable oil.....from palm trees, corn and some types of beans.

a- produced b- is produced c- produces d- is producing

17- Groups of wind turbines in Egypt.....large amounts of electricity.

a- generate b- are generated c- is generated d- are generating

18- It.....snows in Egypt.

a- hasn't b- never c- doesn't d- always

19- Have you ever.....abroad ? - yes ! I have.

a- gone b- been c- being d- going

20- Hesham.....land in the desert for about eight years.

a- reclaimed b- has been reclaiming

c-had reclaimed d- is reclaiming.

a-gone **b-went** **c-have been** **d- have gone**

a- work b- works c- working d- have worked

a. since b. for c. ago d. from

a. haven't decided **b. didn't decide**
c. hadn't decided **d. don't decide**

a. has taken **b. has been taken**
c. was taken **d. is being taken**

a. have just won **b. had just won**
c. has just won, **d. just won**

a. have heard b. had heard c. heard d. was hearing

a. had b. have had c. are having d. were having

a. was written b. am writing c. have written d. written

a. enjoy b. enjoyed c. have enjoyed d. had enjoyed

a. didn't meet b. haven't met c. don't meet d. will not meet

a. were doing b. was doing c. did d- doing

a. have been b. was having c. had d- have had

34. His style of painting ,.....,.....over the years.
a. Has changed b. changing c. is .changed d. had changed
35. Fatema.....her own room since they moved to the new house in Sheikh Zaid.
a. is having b. has c. has had d. had
- 36- It's a monthHend last visited her uncle.
a. for b. since c. of d.to

Find the mistake irreach of the following sentences/ then write it:

- 1- I rely don't go to bed late.
- 2- He has worked in a hotel for 1990 ,
- 3- Water boils at 110°C and freezes when the temperature drop below 0°C.
- 4- The government is spent a lot of money on education.
- 5- Water is boiling at 100°C.
- 6- In many countries, the wind is using to generate electricity.
- 7- Twenty million people saw the new film already.
- 8-Holes are drilling into the earth to find hot water.
- 9- In some cities, rubbish is burn to produce electricity.
- 10-She played the piano since the age of six.
- 11- Electricity is produces from the water in power stations.
- 12- Today most of the energy we.use still coming from fossil fuels.
- 13- Huge quantities of water goes through the High Dam at Aswan from Lake Nasser.
- 14-Hydroelectric power use water to generate electricity.
- 15-Manal take her glass bottles to the recycling plant every week.
- 16-Water is pump from wells to the surface. (SB)
- 17- We can produced electricity by splitting atoms. (LM)
- 18- The blades are drive by the wind.

Language Functions

Opinions **الآراء**

Statement	Response
*What do you think of the new school?	* I think it is wonderful.
* What about the match?	* In my opinion the match was not interesting.

Asking for information:

Statement	Response
Excuse me, could I ask you some questions about?	-Yes, of course.
Can/ Could you tell me ...?	• Yes, certainly,
Do you know anything about...?	I'd rather not answer that question.
Does that mean ...?	• It means....
What does "... "bes mean?	You can look it up in the dictionary.

*** Exercises on Language Functions**

1- Respond to each of the following situations:

- 1- you watched a new film with your friend. You ask about his opinion.
- 2- your sister asked you about your opinion of the book you have just finished.
- 3- you ask your friend if he has any information about spiders.
- 4- Someone asked you a question and you don't want to answer it.
- 5- Someone asks you how you usually travel to school every day.
- 6- you to know about your friend's energy saving habits.

Advanced Translation

Translate into Arabic:

With the increasing worldwide demand for energy, the development renewable energy has become one of the most important issues facing the global community nowadays. World summits and conferences are being held all over the globe in an attempt to ensure that future energy demands are met in a more sustainable way by using renewable sources of energy.

Paragraph

Over population.

Over-population الزيادة السكانية is a very serious problem. Egypt has been suffering from this problem for a long time now. The increase in population has led to many other problems such as shortage of food, overcrowded means of transport وسائل lack of job opportunities and the problem of housing. There aren't enough houses, or food for all people. If we continue to increase in this way, we may face starvation

great efforts are made to solve this problem. The government does its best to convince the people of the importance of birth control تحديد النسل and family planning vast واسع areas of the desert land have been reclaimed. New cities and communities have been built. Mass media are doing their best to persuade people to participate effectively in solving this problem.

2005-2006

1) The terrorist bomb near el-Azhar was a catastrophe. Killing and wounding innocent people solve no problems. The terrorists wanted to harm the Egyptian tourist industry, Egypt remains the land of peace forever.

* catastrophe (n)	كارثة	innocent (adj)	بريء
* renewable (adj)	متجدد	nuclear energy (n)	الطاقة النووية

1) Most of the energy we use today comes from coal, oil and gas. But these will not forever, and burning them is slowly harming the environment. So we need to look other ways of supplying energy.

* أن معظم الطاقة التي نستخدمها اليوم تأتي من الفحم والبتروول والغاز، الا ان هذه المصادر لن تدوم على الابد كما ان حرفها يؤذى البيئة ببطء لذلك فنحن فى حاجة الى ان نبحث عن طرق اخرى للتزود بالطاقة.

٣- لقد اصبح متاحا لكل طالب اقتناء جهاز حاسب آلى.

* It has become available for every student to get a personal computer.

٤- نسعى المؤسسة التعليمية الى تعميق الفكر الديمقراطى وتدريب الاجيال الصاعدة على المشاركة وابداء الرأى والنقد والبناء..

* The educational institution (seeks / tries) to deepen democratic thought and train the oung generation in participation, voicing opinion and constructive criticism.

* institution (n)	مؤسسة	deepen (v)	يعمق
*constructive criticism (n)	النقد البناء	supply (v)	يزود او يمد

2) In her speech entitled "Culture; The Most Effective Language of Peace" Mrs. Mubarak that definitions of peace vary. For many, it means absence of war and violence, while others see that it represents the for inner peace and security. But for many more peace is a prerequisite for development and democracy.

فى كلمتها بعنوان (الثقافة ابلغ لغة للسلام) اكدت السيدة سوزان مبارك ان تعريف السلام قد يختلف من شخص الى اخر. فبالنسبة للبعض يعنى غياب الحرب والعنف وبالنسبة للبعض الاخر يمثل البحث عن السلام الداخلى والامان. الا انه بالنسبة للكثيرين ركيزة للتنمية والديمقراطية.

* Egypt won the African Cup of Nations this year, realizing a great achievement.

٤- يعتقد الاقتصاديون عن حجم التجارة سيزداد بسرعة فائقة فى الألفية الجديدة.

* Economists believe that the volume of trade will quickly increase in the new millennium.

definition (n)	تعريف	vary (v)	يختلف او يتنوع
prerequisite (n)	شرط	quest (n)	بحث او تحقيق

Test 3

A- Language Functions

1) Respond to each of the following situations:

- 1) You want to know some information about computer software.
- 2) You asked about the best way to keep fit.
- 3) You want to know your friend's opinion about your new T-shirt.
- 4) Your brother asked you about your reasons for leaving your job. You don't want to answer.

2) Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

- 1- A: A car hit mine and broke its door.
 B: Have you got the number of the car?
 A: Yes, it's C A 33333.

Place:.....
Speaker A:.....
Speaker B:
Function:..

- 2- A: Would you like to start with soup, sir?
 B: Yes, please.
 A: What would you like to have next?
 B: Rice, meat and potatoes.

Place:.....
Speaker A:.....
Speaker B:
Function:..

B- Vocabulary and Structure 3

3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d'*

1- "Nuclear energy" is the powerful force produced when the nucleus of an atom either.....or combines with another atom.

- a- spells b- splits c- spills d- spoils

2- Rubbish is a cheap sort of.....energy.

- a- nuclear b- non-smoking c- non-renewable d- renewable

3- When oil....., it is pumped to the surface.

- a- find b- found c- is found d- founded

4- Hydroelectric power does not.....the atmosphere.

- a- purify b- pollinate c- pollute d- promote

5- Scientists.....to find more sources of renewable energy.

a- is wanted b- am wanted c- has wanted- d- want

6- We can benefit from newspapers.....by them. '

a- recycling b- making c- using

7- My sister.....at six tomorrow morning.

a- arrives b- arrived c- has arrived

8- Windmills are connected to turbines to.....electricity.

a- motivate b- radiate c- generate d- facilitate

9- "A hydroelectric station" uses power to produce electricity.

a- wind b- coal c- water d- oil

10- It takes.....of years for fossil fuels to form.

a- thousands b- hundreds c- millions d- billions

11- Scientists.....for oil in the desert or under the sea.

a- drill b- drills c- is drilled d- are drilled

12- In many parts of the world, wood.....to heat people's homes.

a- burn b- burns c- is burnt d- are burn

13- Sugar cane.....and used to make fuel.

a- grow b- grows c- grown

14- Water.....to the surface and heated again.

a- pumps b- is pumped c- pump

15- The tower.....in an open place to generate electricity.

a- build b- builds c- is building d- is built

16- "....." means using water power to produce electricity.

a- Wind b- Solar c- Atomic d- Hydroelectric

4) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

1- Electricity is produced in energy stations.

2 –Water is the gas form of ice.

3- Cool is a hard block substance that is burnt to produce heat.

4- Trees are sometimes blow up in the night.

5-Millions of cars produce by Japanese companies every year.

6- When Wafaa will cook dinner, she will help you do your homework.

C- Reading

5) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many scientists are optimistic that new ways of generating large amounts of energy will be successfully developed, but at the same time they fear the consequences. If the world population goes on increasing at its present rate, and each individual continues to use more energy every year, we may, in fifty years time, be burning up so much energy that we would damage the earth's atmosphere. By raising the temperature of the atmosphere, we could melt the Arctic and Antarctic ice caps and change the pattern of vegetable and animal life through the world a frightening possibility.

These changes will have to be kept in mind as scientists'continue with their experiments. In the meantime, we can all help to protect the environment by not wasting energy. This means driving more carefully and turning off unnecessary lighting and heating in the home. In these small ways we can all help to make the world a cleaner, healthier place for future generations.

A) Answer the following questions:

- 1]How do many scientists feel about generating new ways of energy?
- 2] What does "frightening possibility" refer to?
- 3] What will happen if each individual continues to use more energy every year?

B) Choose the correct answer from a. b, c or d:

4] We should save energy by.....

- a- driving faster
- b- not stopping at traffic lights
- c- having our cars regularly serviced
- d- driving slowly in traffic jams

5] We can all help to protect the environment by.....

- a- using too much energy
- b- less energy
- c- more energy
- d- no energy

6- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

My profession was chosen by my father. My idea was to take up medicine, but as I was dependent on my father. I was forced to obey his instructions. He sent me to college and there, for four years I studied hard. My efforts were at last rewarded when one day my father informed me that I had been successful at my examinations and was now a qualified lawyer.

Months passed and my few cases were ordinary ones. They were not important enough to bring my name before the public with satisfactory results. My expenses exceeded my income and I began to feel that I would not become a distinguished lawyer.

One day I was told that an important man wanted me to defend his son who was accused of murder. I had not been introduced to the accused man but had only met his father. Imagine my horror when I discovered that he was my good friend of college days. I fought harder than ever to save his life but he was convicted. From that rday I refused to continue my profession as a lawyer and my decision was final.

A) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Why did the writer have to take up medicine?**
- 2- When did the writer decide to give up his profession?**
- 3- Why was the writer worried about his career?**

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- In his early years, the writer's desire was to become a/an.....

- a- doctor b- lawyer c- author d-teacher**

5- The writer's final decision was

- a- to continue as a lawyer b- defend the accused**
c- to stop being a lawyer d- to become a doctor

The Reader (The Prisoner of Zenda)

7-A) Answer the following questions:

- 1} Why don't Fritz and Sapt eat very much? What advice do they give to the King?
- 2} Why does the Duke poison the King?
- 3} How and when will they get the King to Strelsau?
- 4} Who overhears their plan? What do they do with the person?

B) Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:

"Remember, sir that we have an early start tomorrow."

- 1- Who says this? To whom?
- 2- Where will they go tomorrow?
- 3- Why do you think the speaker makes this remembrance?

C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

- 1) If Rudolf doesn't become king, Duke Michael will take the castle.
- 2- The King invites Rassendyll to have dinner with him in Strelsau.

8- Write a paragraph of about 100 words about:

"The advantages and disadvantages of the internet"

9-A) Translate into Arabic:

As we in a technological age, anything seems possible. It took a long time to develop new ideas in the past, but this is not so any longer. Progress in our present age depends mainly on computers without which it would be impossible.

B) Translate into English:

- ١- سوف تدوم بعض مصادر الطاقة مدى الحياة والبعض الآخر ينفذ قريباً.
- ٢- ان الماء مصدر مهم للطاقة الكهرومائية ، فهي رخيصة كما أنها لا تلوث الجو المحيط بنا.

Review A

listening Text:

Ahmed	:	Hi, Omar.
Omar:		Hello, Ahmed.
Ahmed	:	Did you see that television programme last night about energy from the sea?
Omar:		No, I didn't. I had too much homework. Was it interesting?
Ahmed	:	Yes, it was really interesting. It showed how electricity can be generated by waves.
Omar:		That sounds like a good idea. How do they do it?
Ahmed	:	They use snakes.
Omar:		Snakes?
Ahmed	:	Not real snakes! Snakes made of rubber.
Omar:		Really? How do they work?
Ahmed:		Well, the snakes are nine metres long. One end's attached to the seabed .As the waves move, the snake goes up and down and this generates electricity.
Omar:		Nine metres! That's very long, isn't it?
Ahmed	:	Yes, but in future they'll probably be two hundred metres long.
Omar:		That's amazing!
Ahmed	:	They're going to make wave farms with fifty or more snakes in one place.
Omar:		Really? Isn't it dangerous for ships to have so many of these things in the sea?
Ahmed	:	Yes, the snakes are just under the surface, so ships shouldn't be permitted near the farms.
Omar:		Are they expensive to produce?
Ahmed	:	Not really - the snakes themselves are very simple. There are hardly any moving parts, so nothing much can go wrong. And they produce cheap electricity.
Omar:		That's good, isn't it? There will always be waves, so it means -in the future we'll never run out of enen

Vocabulary on Listening

amazing (adj)	مدهش	giant (n)	عملاق
inlet (n)	شرم صغير في الساحل	impact(n)	تأثير
outlet (n)	مخرج - منفذ	parts (n)	اجزاء
attach (v)	يربط - يلحق	permit (v)	يسمح
barriers (n)	حواجز	produce (v)	ينتج
buoy (n)	عوامة (الرسو السفن)	really (adv)	حقا
course(n)	مجرى (الماء)	release (v)	يطلق
current (n)	تيار (هواء- ماء)	rubber	مطاط
electricity (n) -	كهرباء	run out (v)	ينفذ
energy (n)	طاقة	seabed (n)	قاع البحر
environmental (adj)	بيئي	show (v)	يبين- يوضح
estuary (n)	مصب خليجي لنهر	snake (n)	ثعبان- أفعى
expensive (adj)	غال	surface (n)	سطح
farms (n)	مزارع	tidal power (n)	طاقة المد والجزر
fine (n)	غرامة	tides (n)	المد والجزر
generate (v)	يولد	waves (n)	امواج

Reading

Fast forward

You are driving your smart car along the motorway from Cairo to Aswan when something goes wrong with the engine. You do not know what the problem is, but the computer in your car will help you. It will examine the engine and find what is wrong. It will then connect to the internet to find the distance to the nearest garage where your car can be repaired. The computer will then send an e-mail to the garage to check that it has the parts you need for your car. If the garage has these, you will receive an e-mail asking when you would like to take your car to be repaired. You reply on your mobile phone which will e-mail your message to the garage. In this way, your car's engine problems will be solved.

There's also a device which will control how fast you can drive on the road you are on. It does not matter what you do, it will

be impossible to drive faster than what the device tells the engine. Experts have found that this device will reduce the number of road accidents and save thousands of lives every year.

Is this just a science fiction? No, both these devices are currently being used. You can find information about them on the internet. Drivers all over the world are already using sat-nav systems to tell them where they are and how to get to a destination. In the future, technology will also help them to solve engine problems to keep everyone safe.

Vocabulary on Reading

accidents (n)	حوادث	connect (v)	يوصل - يتصل
along (adv)	على طول- بمحاذاة	control (v)	يتحكم في
check (v)	يفحص	currently (adv)	حالياً
describe (v)	يصف	matter (n)	أمر - شأن
destination (n)	وجهة السفر	message (n)	رسالة
device (n)	جهاز	motorway (n)	طريق سريع
distance (n)	مسافة	receive(v)	يتسلم
engine (n)	محرك- موتور	reduce (v)	يقلل
examine (v)	يختبر	repair(v)	يصلح
experts (n)	خبراء	reply(v)	يرد
garage (n)	ورشة تصليح	safe(adj)	آمن
Get to (v)	يصل الى	sat-nav System	نظام الملاحة الجوية
Go wrong (v)	يحدث به عطل	science fiction (n)	خيال علمي
Impossible (adj)	مستحيل	smart car (n)	السيارة الذكية
Include	يتضمن	solve(n)	يحل

Critical thinking and communication

Almost (adv)	تقريباً	opinion(n)	رأى
--------------	---------	------------	-----

Area (n)	منطقة	Partner (n)	شريك
Car makers (n)	صانعو السيارات	Pay for (v)	يدفع ثمناً
Cause (v) (n)	يسبب- مسبب	Plan (v) (n)	يخطط - خطة
Certainly (adv)	بالتأكيد	Successful (adj)	ناجح
Cyclist (n)	راكب الدراجة	The rest (n)	الباقى
Improve (v)	يطور- يحسن	Walker (n)	متجول
anniversary (n)	ذكرى سنوية	owner (n)	مالك - صاحب
Bulb(n)	لمبة- مصباح	popular (adj)	شعبي
Burn (v)	يحرق	realize (v)	يدرك الى
celebrate (v)	يحتفل بـ	refer to (v)	يشير الى
central(adj)	مركزى	sandstorm (n)	عاصفة رملية
electric (adj)	كهربى	space travel (n)	السفر للفضاء
fictional (adj)	خيالى	Supply (v)	يمد - يزود
gymnastics (n)	تمارين رياضية	useful (adj)	مفيد
intelligent (adj)	ذكى	wealthy (adj)	ثرى
invent (v)	يخترع	weightless (adj)	عديم الوزن

Expressions & Phrases :

Agree on	يتفق على	at the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الاسبوع
All over the world	فى كل انحاء العالم	(be) attached to	متصل بـ
Ask about	يسأل عن	(be)changed into	يتحول الى
At the age of	فى سن	(be) turned into	يتحول الى
Depend on	يعتمد على	on the mobile	على المحمول
Do exercise	يمارس تمارين رياضية	Pay for	يدفع ثمناً
Do research	يقوم باجراء بحث	Run out of	يستهلك
Go shopping	يذهب للتسوق	solve a problem	يحل مشكلة
Go wrong	يحدث به عطل	Speed up	يسرع

In this way	بهذه الطريقة	send money on	ينفق المال على
Last for	يستمر لمدة	Switch on	يشغل
Make precautions	يقوم بعمل تنبؤات	take an exam	يمتحن
Make suggestions	يقدم اقتراحات	Turn on	يشغل
On the internet	على الانترنت	Warn...of	يحذر.. من

Notes on Vocabulary

{1}

at the age of / in the age of

*at the age of...

» At the age of 10, I went to live with my aunt. فى سن - عمر

* in the age of

فى عصر

» We live in the age of technology.

{2}

Capture

captivate

* capture

ياسر يستولى على

» Most of the men had been either killed or captured.

* captivate

يعجب بـ ياسر ب

» Their romance captivated the whole country.

{3}

Location

destination

* location

موضع - موقع

» We have not found a suitable location for the new hospital.

* destination

جهة الوصول - المكان المقصود

» They should reach their destination by about mid-afternoon.

{4}

Special

private

*special

خاص (افضل من العادى - من نوع خاص)

» Let's all make a special effort to welcome the visitors.

* private

خاص (يمتلكه شخص او مجموعة)

» I bought a private car/ house

Verbs and Prepositions

To			
Connect to	يتصل بـ	Get to	يصل الى
(be) attached to	مرتبط بـ		
For			
Last for	يستمر لمدة	Pay for	يدفع ثمننا
Useful for	مفيد لـ		
of			
Cause of	سبب	Run out of	ينفذ
Warn...of	يحذر.. من		
On			
Switch on	يشغل	Turn on	يشغل
Depend on	يعتمد على		
Into			
Chang into	يتغير الى	Turn into	يتحول الى
Other prepositions			
Go down	ينخفض	Go up	يرتفع

General Exercises on Units 1-3

Respond to each of the following situations:

- 1] You are introduced to someone who you have never met before.
- 2] You meet your friend Ali in the street.
- 3] You ask your friend if he has any information about cloning.
- 4] want to ask your uncle some questions about genetic engineering.

- 5] Someone asked you a question and you don't want to answer it.
- 6] You need permission to use a computer at school.
- 7] A friend wonders if he can use your pencil.
- 8] A friend asks if you'd mind lending him your bike.
- 9] You want a friend to help you with something.
- 10] You need advice from your brother about the house plant you have just bought.
- 11] Someone asks your advice about the best way to keep fit.
- 12] Someone advises you to do something. You don't want to accept the advice.
- 13] You ask a friend if he likes living in the countryside.
- 14] Someone asks you if you like pop music.
- 15] A friend asks you whether you'd like tea or coffee.
- 16] A friend asks you to tell him about the advantage of taking exercise
- 17] At an interview, you are asked about your qualifications.
- 18] Your friend believes that violent films are exciting. You don't agree
- 19] Your brother thinks that men and women are equal. You agree with him.
- 20] You ask your sister to clean the room for you.

2- Mention the piece, the speakers and the language function in each the following mini-dialogues:

- 1 - A: May I take your order, sir?
 B: Yes, I'll have Steak, please.
 A: How would you like it, sir?
 B: Well done, please.

Place:.....
 Speaker A:.....
 Speaker B:.....
 Function:.....

- 2- A: I want to buy a new blouse. Could you give me advice about latest fashion?
 B: Floral blouses are now in fashion.

Place:.....
 Speaker A:.....
 Speaker B:.....
 Function:.....

3- A: Can I help you, sir?

B: I'd like to have this computer fixed.

A: What's wrong with it?

B: It does not play videos well.

Place:.....

Speaker A:.....

Speaker B:.....

Function:.....

4- A: Please, have a look at our pamphlet.

Which tour do you prefer?

B: I don't know. What do you think?

A: I recommend Sharm El Sheikh.

Place:.....

Speaker A:.....

Speaker B:.....

Function:.....

5- A: Can I help you, sir?

**B: Yes, please. I'd like to have these pants
cleaned and pressed. .**

A:OK. We can have them ready for you tomorrow.

B: Fine.

Place:.....

Speaker A:.....

Speaker B:.....

Function:.....

6- A: What's the matter with you?

**B: I can't see well when I use the computer for
a long time.**

**A: Let me examine your eyes. You need a pair
of glasses.**

Place:.....

Speaker A:.....

Speaker B:.....

Function:.....

7- A: Open your English books, please.

B: Which page, sir?

A: Page 55.

Place:.....

Speaker A:.....

Speaker B:.....

Function:.....

Exercise Based on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1-Astronauts wear.....clothes which protect them.

a-certain b- particular c- special d- private

2- It is expected that oil will have.....out in 40 years' time. '

a- run b- taken c- gone d- moved

3- Sat-nav system is very useful.....many drivers.

a- at b- with c- for d- from

4 -Something.....wrong with my car yesterday.

a- came b- worked c- had d- went

5- I'm afraid he isn't here. Can I take a.....?

a- message b- message c- a letter d- telephone

6-The.....between Cairo and London is 3, 5000 kilometers.

a- way **b- space** **c- distance** **d- area**

7- A.....is a reptile with a long body and no legs.

a- snake **b- tortoise** **c- pigeon** **d- raven**

8- This map shows the exact.....of the project.

a- existence b- location c- destination d- generation

9- We should do our best to.....the number of road accidents.

a- reduce b- increase c- raise d- rise

10-What are the main.....of road accidents in your area?

a- affects b- causes c- reasons d- cases

11-I went to the.....to have my car repaired

a- park **b- store** **c- gear** **d- garage**

12-.....cars will solve all the technical problems.

a- Stupid b- Smart c- Clever d- Idle

13- Tires are almost always made of.....

a- wood b- copper c- iron d- rubber

14-Two of the soldiers died and the rest were.....

a- captivate b- captured c- given d- admired

15-.....is the rise' and fall of the sea that happens twice evefy day.

a- Tide **b- Hide** **c- Ride** **d- Side**

16-Wind.....are used for producing electricity.

a- fields b- areas c- fins d- farms

17-The new tax will have a serious.....on most people.

a- pleasure b- impact c- contact d- connect

18-They have been....ever since they read about benefits of exercise

a- speakers b- talkers c- walks d- walkers

19- July 2009 was the 40thof man first walking on the moon.

a- adversary b- universally c- university d- anniversary

20- He did a lot to.....conditions for factory workers.

a- approve b- move c- improve d- destroy

Student's Book - Workbook - Longman Exercises - Previous Exams

21- Millions of people watched the rocket.....on TV.

a- start b- launch c- set off d- beginning

22- The medicine I'm taking is wonderful. It has no side.....

a- results b- damage c- effects d- problems

23- My brother and I aren't twins, but we are very.....

a- alike b- same c- like d- correct

24- Electricity is produced in a/an.....station.

a- bus b- railway c- power d- energy

25- Coal and oil are two kinds of fossil.....

a- petrol b- gas c- energy d- fuels

26- The.....in the pipe is caused by too much pressure.

a- leak b- gravity c- launch d- escape

27-We must make some adjustments in the communication
.....before it can work properly.

a- group b- mission c- gymnastics d- system

28- Not many people study.....today, although many English words
come from Latin and Greek.

a- politics b- classic c- classics d- classicists

29- Oil and gas are fossil.....

a- energies b- power c- stations d- fuels

30- Molten lava comes from under the.....

- a- power stations b- earth's surface
c- stones d- geothermal energy

31- Atomic energy is created by.....atoms.

- a- sitting b- spitting c- situating d- splitting

32- The government needs to.....the value of investing in renewable energy.

- a- interest b- examine c- observe d- secure

33-.....Egypt has programs for the development of renewable energy

- a- Currently b- Sometimes c- Silently d- Once in a while

34- The sisters are more.....than ypu think.

- a- a like b- twins c- alike d- allot

35- Please don't put any more.....on me. I have so much to do as it is.

- a- waste b- pressure c- launch d- expectation

Exercise Based on Grammar

36-.....a thousand pounds too much to spend on holiday?

- a – Am b- Is c- Are d- Were

37- A: Are you leaving this evening?

B: Yes, my train.....at 7.15.

- a- is going to leave b- will leave c- leaves d- has left

38- A: Do you have any plans for the weekend?

B : I..... Professor Ali on Saturday morning.

- a- meet b- 'm going to meet c- 'Il meet d- would meet

39- A: Have you made any arrangements for next week?

B: Yes, I.....a friend from Cairo on Monday.

- a- Will meet b- meet c- am meeting d- have met

40- A: Im going on holiday to Europe this October. Should I take an umbrella?

B : Yes, it.....

- a- will probably rain b- is probably raining
c- probably rains d- has probably rained

41- A : This year I'm going on holiday with my family to Italy.

B : Im sure you.....it.

- a- enjoy b- will enjoy c- are enjoying d- have enjoyed

42- Energy.....when the light from the sun reaches the Earth.

a- produce b- produces c- is producing d- is produced

43-Howmoney did you pay for the book on your desk?

a- much b- many c- some d- lot

44- Howpeople are there in a football team?

a- some b- much c- many d- few

45- How many kilos.....it from school to your home?

a-am b-is c-are d-have

46- I.....some relatives next Monday. It's already arranged.

o- visit b- am going to visit 'c- am visiting d- would visit

47- I expect he.....pass his exams easily.

a- will pass b-is going to pass c-is passing d-would pass

48- Rubbishand turned into energy.

a- burns b- burn c- is burning d- is burnt

49- The film.....at 7.30 this evening.

a- is starting b- is going to start c- starts d- has started

50- The wind.....to generate electricity.

a- uses b- is used c- is using d- used

<p style="text-align: center;"><u>Student's Book - Workbook -Longman Exercises</u> <u>Previous Exams</u></p>

51- Choose this one. I think that colour.....good on you.

a- is looking b- will look c- looked d- are looking

52- The police.....for more money to-buy new equipment.

a- are asking b- is asking c- are asked d- is asked

53- The team's plane.....next Tuesday at 6.05.

a- is going be b- was arriving c- arrives d- arrive

54- Some day people.....all of the ocean bottom in submarines.

a- are exploring b- will explore c- explores d- going to explore

55- There has been.....talk about how we can reduce our waste.

a- many b- any c- none d- much

56- The monuments of Philae.....to preserve our ancient heritage.

a-were moved b-was moved c-moved d-is moved

57-I.....my husband for lunch tomorrow at the new restaurant

a- meets b- 'm meeting c- meeting d- will meet

Exercise Based on Vocabulary

4- Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write it corn

- 1- Clever cars will solve all the technical problems.
- 2- Drivers mustn't exceed the speed border.
- 3- He died in the age of 80.
- 4-1 went to the park to have my car mended.
- 5- In case of emergency contract me at once.
- 6- Information has become available in the internet.
- 7- It comes dark early in winter.
- 8- Jules Verne was called the father of maths fiction.
- 9- Something came wrong with my car.
- 10-The price of the room is ten dollars containing breakfast.
- 11- This shirt is small, I want others one.
- 12-This sign refers for the library.
- 13-Three soldiers were captivated in the battle.
- 14-Tires are made of plastic.
- 15-Wind firms are used to generate electricity.

Exercise Based on Grammar

- 16- How many petrol does your car use?**
- 17- Many lives will be save by the devices.**
- 18- Much things can go wrong with a car engine.**
- 19- Sat-nav systems is very useful for many drivers.**
- 20- The rocket is going to reach the moon on Tuesday.Everyone watched the lunch on TV.**
- 21-Thirty kilometers are a long way to travel on one litre of petrol.**
- 22-They' re going to made wave farms.**
- 23- I'm go shopping with Rasha at the weekend .**
- 24- I'm taken an English exam this week.**
- 25- I think you'll enjoying this book.**
- 26- How much people are there in a football team?**
- 27- How many money did you pay for these books?**
- 28- Are a thousand pounds too much to spend on a holiday?**
- 29- How many kilometres are it from school to your house?**
- 30- Some people are put special glass on the roofs of their houses.**
- 31- How are light and heat from the sun uses in Egypt?**
- 32- There are a millions of grains of sand on the beach. (LM)**
- 33- How much ice cubes do I put into each glass? (LM)**
- 34- The whipping cream was ruining by the extreme heat. (LM)**
- 35- I just had an idea. After we finish our lessons, we are gone for ice cream. (LM)**
- 36 –At a cafe, people usually chooses the coffee over the tea. (LM)**
- 37- Fifteen minutes seem like a long time, but an hour seems like forever. (LM)**
- 38- Are a kilo of iron equal to a kilo of feathers? Of course, they are both a kilo (LM).**
- 39- Their constant debating of politics bore me. (LM)**

5- Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (WB)

Thomas Edison

It is difficult to believe that less than 150 years ago, we could not switch on lights in our homes when it went dark. People who wanted to work or study at night had use gas or oil lights. Electric light bulbs were invented in 1819 by Thomas Edison, who also helped produced other system of getting electricity from where it was generated to where it was used.

Edison was a very intelligent man, but when he was at school his teachers did not realize this. He had to leave school at the age of seven because he asked too many questions. His mother realised that he only asked questions because he was interested, so she educated him at home. The General Electric Company which Edison started still supplies most of the electricity in North America today.

A- Answer the following questions:

- 1- What three forms of energy are referred to in the article?
- 2- As well as light bulbs, what did Thomas Edison invent?
- 3- Why did Edison have to leave school at the age of seven?

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4- Which of the following is true?
a- Edison invented electricity. b- Edison never went to school.
c- Edison was taught by one of his parents.
d- Edison is still the owner of The General Electric Company.
- 5- What does 'generate' mean in the phrase 'generate electricity'?
a- Produce. b- Use. c- Invent. d- Find.

6- Write a paragraph of about 100 words about:

"Space travel in the future"

7- Translation:

A- Translate into Arabic: (WB)

Currently the cost of a holiday in space is very high. But the more people want something, the cheaper it will become. So if you are interested, start saving now

B- Translate into English:

- ١- مليون جنيه مبلغ كبير من المال اليس كذلك؟
٢- فى بعض الاماكن نستخدم قصب السكر فى صناعة الوقود للسيارات ومركبات اخرى.
- =====

Test (1-3)

A - Language Functions

1- Respond to each of the following situations:

1. Your friend wants to know what your plans are after finishing school.
2. You are told that you have just been accepted to the best university in Egypt. Express how you feel about this.
3. You want to know the number of countries which use nuclear power. Ask your teacher.
4. Your friend thinks there are better things to spend money on than space travel. Agree, giving a reason.

2- Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the two mini-dialogues:

- 1- A : Thank you for coming, sir. I'm sure our
istene'rs will enjoy the show.

B: I hope so.

A: So what is going to be today's dessert?

B: Today we are going to talk about how to make Swiss
chocolate cake.

- 2- A: May I help you?

B: Yes, I'd like to buy this book, please.

A: Great choice! That'll be LE 24, please.

B: Here you are.

Place:.....
Speaker A:...
Speaker B:....
Function:..

B- Vocabulary and Structure

3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Although the medicine made my headache better, it had some terrible.....

a- stomach aches b- side effects c- spokes d- treatment

2-, the cost of meat is very high, but if we all eat less meat, prices will drop.

a- Luckily b- Currently c- Completely d- Probably

3- Tomorrow morning, I'm.....to Tanta.

a- travelling b- travel c- will travel d- travelled

4- We....probably have ice cream for dessert since it's so hot today.

a- going to b- will c- are d- won't

5- We have one litre of milk.....enough.

a- That are b- These are c- Those are d- That's

6- In our social studies class we had a big.....about whether women should be judged or not. *

a- debate b- team c- suspect d- match

7- The police.....trying to solve the mystery of the stolen Van Gogh painting.

a- are b- is c- will d- can

8- The people on the bus.....afraid when the bus suddenly stopped.

a- was b- are c- were d- is

9- Not all twins look exactly.....

a- apart b- alike c- different d- same

10- One of the.....on my bike, wheel broke. I need to fix it.

a- distances b- secrets c- leaks d- spokes

11- There is a.....in this pipe. That's why there's water all over the place.

a- spoke b- leak c- system d- waste

12- Wind turbines along the Red Sea large.....amounts of electricity.

a- generate b- is generated c- are generated d- generating

13-.....can we use wind to generate electricity?

a- How b- How much c- What d- How many

14- Below the earth's surface rocks are in liquid form. They are.....

a- water b- cold c- molten d- hard

15- When.....split, nuclear power is produced.

a- plants b- atoms c- turbines d- fossils

16- Wood.....to heat some people's homes.

a- are burnt b- is burnt c- burned d-«burning

4- Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, correctly:

1- Statistics were my favourite subject at school.

2- Travellers to the moon feel waitless because there is no gravity in space.

3- Coal is a renewable source of energy.

4- Water is pump to the surface from underground lakes.

5- Energy from the sun is unexpensive.

6- Sunlight reaches the solar panels and is produces electricity,.

C- Reading

5- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Although hydroelectric power plants cause less pollution than other types of power plants, they cause other environmental problems. Firstly, when a dam is built, a large area of land is flooded and often many people are forced to leave their farms and homes. Secondly, the rotting plants in the flooded area make the greenhouse gas methane, whose emissions can be very high. Thirdly, the dam prevents fish from swimming upstream to get to the places where they reproduce, so fish populations are reduced. There are other problems. The water exiting the turbines has

different oxygen level and is much warmer. This harms the plants and animals living downstream from the dam. Finally, because the water exiting the turbines has less sediment (sand and soil) in it, it wears away the river banks downstream. Scientists must examine all the possible side effects of a new dam while it is in the planning stages.

A- Give short answers to the following questions'.

- 1- Tell two ways that hydroelectric dams harm fish.
- 2- How is the water different after it goes through the turbines?
- 3- Why must people leave their farms and homes when a dam is built?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- What does whose refer to?

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| a- The rotting plant. | b- Methane. |
| c- pollution. | d- The flooded area. |

5- When should scientists study the side effects of a new dam?

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| a- While it is being built. | b- After it is built. |
| c- While it is being planned. | d- After it is planned. |

the following passage, then answer the questions:

Prince Edwin was the oldest son of a wealthy king. He was riding in the forest one day when he met a poor boy called Tim. Edwin and Tim looked alike, almost identical. They talked and played for several hours. Then, Prince Edwin persuaded Tim to change clothes with him. Tim pretended to be the prince and rode back to the castle. Edwin went to Tim's house and learnt how difficult it was to be poor. The two boys had many adventures because they did not know how to act like each other. After several weeks the king died. Tim sent a message to Edwin and told him to return quickly. Edwin reached the castle on the night before the coronation. On that great occasion, he became king.

and he made Tim his chief adviser and asked him to live in restle with him.

A- Give short answers to the following questions.

1- Why do you think Prince Edwin wanted to change places with Tim?

2- Why didn't the boys know how to act like each other?

3- If you were Tim, would you call Edwin back for the coronation? Why or why not?

B- Choose the correct answer from a b, c or d:

4- Whose idea was it that the boys change clothes and places?

a- The kings. b- Tim's. c- Edwin's. d- Tim and Edwin's.

5- For how long did the boys change places?

a- Several weeks. b- Several hours. c- One night. d- One week

The Reader (The Prisoner of Zenda)

Answer the following questions:

1 - What is the setting of The Prisoner of Zenda?

2- How old is Rudolf when the events of the story start?

3- According to Rose, how is Rudolf Rassendyll different from his brother Roba

4- Mention three skills that Rudolf Rassendyll has.

B) Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:

"To a man for me, opportunities are responsibilities."

1- Who says this to whom?

2- When does the speaker say this?

3- Do you think a person like this is very serious about work or life?

C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

1- Rudolf Rassendyll tells Rose he is going to go walking in the West Indies.

2- Antoinette de Mauban is poor but ambitious woman.

D- Writing

8- Write a paragraph of about 100 words about:

"Whether you think modern technology saves or wastes people's time"

9- A- Translate into Arabic:

Anthony Hope was born near London in 1863. After finishing school, he went Oxford University where he studied classics. He was interested in politics i was a good speaker in university debates.

B- Translate into English:

- ١- فى المستقبل سوف تساعدنا التكنولوجيا على قيادة السيارات بامان اكثر.
- ٢- فى رأيك كيف تبدو الكرة الارضية من (على سطح) القمر؟

Unit (4)

Writers and Stories

Listening Text

Interviewer	: When did you start writing?
Writer	: I have written stories and poems for as long as I can remember
Interviewer	: What was the first thing you wrote?
Writer	: When I was seven, I wrote a poem which won second prize in a national competition for school children.
Interviewer	: When did you start writing stories?
Writer	: When I was at university I wrote short stories for student magazine. My head was always full of ideas. While I was finishing one story, I was thinking of the next one.
Interviewer	: Wasn't that very confusing?
Writer	: Not really. I used to write very quickly - I finished most short stories in two or three days^As soon as I'd finished one story, I'd start the next one.
Interviewer	: Do you still write like that?
Writer	: No, I haven't written any short stories for over twenty years. Now I only write novels- they take much longer.
Interviewer	: So how do you write now? Do you have a fixed routine?
Writer	: Yes. I write from nine in the morning till tftree in the afternoon, with a ten- minute break for coffee at midday. I write an average of one thousand words a day.
Interviewer	: Do you use a compute'r?
Writer	: No, I'm old-fashioned - I use a pencil and paper. I've tried using a computer, but it gave me a headache. When I'm happy with what I've written, my secretary types it onto the computer. My publisher insists that I send everything as an e-mail attachment.
Interviewer	: And do you check what you've written?
Writer	: Of course. I write one thousand new words a day for a

	week, then I spend two or three days checking the week's work until I'm completely happy with what I've written. My last novel was changed six times before I was happy with it.
Interviewer	: Do you show other people?
Writer	: No, not until s novel's almost finished. Then I give it to two or three good friends and ask them for their opinions.
Interviewer	: Do they ever tell you they don't like what you've written? : Yes! Last year both of the people who read one of my'books said they didn't like how my story ended. So I changed it.
Writer	: That's very interesting. Thank you for talking to me. It's been a pleasure.

a) Answer the following :

4- Des the writer have a fixed routine?

.....

5- Des the writer use a computer? Why ? Why not?

.....

6-Who does the write ask for opinion before? Publishing his novels?

.....

b) Choose the correct answer :

3- The writer's last novel was changedtimes.

a) 10 b) 20 c) 6 d) 3

4- The word which is closest the meaning of the word pleasure is ..

a) grief b) boring c) fun d) dull

vocabulary on Listening :

Articles (n)	مقالات	newspaper reports (n)	تقارير صحفية
Attachment (n)	ملحق - مرفق	Novels (n)	روايات
Attach (v)	يلحق- يرفق	old-fashioned (adj)	موضة قديمة
Average (n)	متوسط- معدل	fashionable (adj)	مساير للموضة- انيق
Break (n) (v)	راحة- فسحة- يكسر	fashion (n)	موضة
Check (v)	يتأكد - يفحص	Race (n)	سباق

Competition (n)	منافسة	routine (n)	روتين
Compete (v)	ينافس	routinely (adv)	بطريقة روتينية
Competitive (adj)	تنافسي	Poem (n)	قصيدة
Confusing (adj)	مربك	Poetry (n)	شعر
Confused (adj)	مرتبك	Poet (n)	شاعر
Fixed (adj)	ثابت	Prize	جائزة
Headache (n)	صداع	Publisher (n)	ناشر - دار نشر
Insist (on) (v)	يصر (على)	publish (v)	ينشر
Midday (n)	منتصف النهار	Type (v)	يكتب (على الآلة الكاتبة أو الكمبيوتر)
National (adj)	قومي - وطني	Writer (n)	كاتب
Nationality (n)	جنسية		

Reading

Yehia Haqqi (1905 - 1992)

Yehia Haqqi was one of the pioneers of modern Egyptian literature. As well as being an important writer, he was an expert on Arab culture. Yehia Haqqi was born in 1905 in the Sayyida Zeinab district of Cairo. He graduated in law and worked for a short time as a lawyer. In 1929, he began his career as a diplomat and he worked abroad for more than 20 years. The time he spent in France, Italy, Turkey and Libya gave him experiences he later used in his writing.

At the time as he was working, Haqqi was also writing stories. His first short story, published in 1925, established him as one of the great short story writers of the Arab world.

Haqqi always wanted to help poor and disabled people. He had to go to hospital after an earthquake in Cairo, but gave his bed to a poor person who he thought needed it more. In 1955, he wrote a collection of short stories about the poor and the disabled which won an important prize. Another of his stories, The postman, was made into a film. Haqqi was also interested in the Arabic language and he developed a new style of writing which is respected today.

As well as writing his own novels and stories, Haqqi also translated Russian, French Italian and Turkish literature into

Arabic. He was a very strong believer in the location and supported many young Egyptian writers. Haqqi died in 1992, but , is still thought of as the father of the modern short story and the novel in Egypt.

a)Answer the following:-

1-Show how human was Haqqi?

.....

2-Find words in the passage that means a) area b) handicapped

.....

3-How old was Yehia Haqqi when he died?

.....

b) Choose the correct answer:-

3- Yahia Haqqi is still thought of as the father of.....in Egypt.

c) poetry b) Drama c) short story d) prose

4- Yahia Haqqi worked a broad for.....years

a) 20 b) 25 c) 10 d)15

Vocabulary on Reading :

believer (n)	مؤمن	experienced (adj)	لديه خبرة
believe (v)	يؤمن - يصدق	graduate (v)	يتخرج
career (n)	مهنة- حياة عملية	graduate (n)	خريج
collection (n)	مجموعة	graduation (n)	التخرج
culture (n)	ثقافة	interested (in) (adj)	مهتم بـ
cultural (adj)	ثقافي	interest (n)	اهتمام
customs (n)	عادات	law (n)	القانون
customary (adj)	مألوف- من العادة	lawyer (n)	محام
develop (v)	يطور- يتطور	literature (n)	الادب
development (n)	تطور	pioneers (n)	رواد
diplomat (n)	دبلوماسي	respected (adj)	محترم
district (n)	منطقة - حي	society (n)	مجتمع
earthquake (n)	زلزال	style (n)	اسلوب- نمط

establish (v)	يوطد قدمه- يرسخ- يؤسس	stylish (adj)	أنيق
establishment (n)	تأسيس	support (v)	يساند
experiences (n)	تجارب- خبرات	the disabled (n)	المعاقين

Critical Thinking & Communication

clerk (n)	موظف-كاتب (يقوم بأعمال مكتبية)	manager (n)	مدير
concern (v) (n)	يهتم – يقلق- اهتمام	management (n)	إدارة
improve (v)	يحسن- يطور	novelist (n)	روائي
improvement (n)	تحسين- تطوير	Understand (v)	يفهم
journalist (n)	صحفي	unusual (adj)	غير عادي
journalism (n)	صحافة		

Workbook

ahletics	العاب القوى	obey (v)	يطيع
attend	يحضر	retire (v)	يتقاعد
behaviour	سلوك	rules (n)	قوانين
belief s (n)	معتقدات	show (v)	يبين – يوضح
block (n)	كتلة – عمارة سكنية	sound (v)	يبدو انه
century (n)	قرن (مائة عام)	traditional (adj)	تقليدي
editor(n)	محرر	transplant (v) (n)	ينقل – نقل
medicines(n)	ادوية	typical (adj)	نموذجي

Definition

Competition	منافسة- مسابقة	a situation in which people or organizations compete with each other.
Old-fashioned	موضة قديمة	Not modern and not fashionable any more
Routine (n)	روتين	The usual way in which you do things.
Custom	عادة – عرف	Something that people do in a society because it is traditional.
develop	يطور- يتطور	to make a new product or idea successful (Note transitive meaning here)
district	منطقة-قسم-حي	An area of a city or country.
Establish	يثبت قدمه- يرسخ	to achieve or give someone a respected position in a society or in an organization.
law	قانون	The system of rules that people in a

		country or place must obey.
pioneer	رائد	one of the first people to do something that other people will continue to develop.
style	اسلوب	a way of doing or making something that is typical of a particular person, group or period.
midday	منتصف النهار - الظهيرة	twelve o'clock in the middle of the day.
publisher	ناشر - دارنشر	a person or company that produces books, magazines, etc. and makes them available for people to buy.
attachment	ملحق - مرفق	something you attach to / send with an e-mail.

Phrases & Expressions & Idioms

as a sign of respect	كدليل احترام	e-mail attachments	مرفقات بالايمل
at a time	في وقت ما	established himself as	يثبت قدمه - جعل لنفسه مكانة
at least	على الاقل	give me a headache	يسبب لى صداعا
at midday	في منتصف اليوم	graduate in law	يتخرج في القانون
at midnight	في منتصف الليل	be in charge of	مسئول عن
at the age of	في سن	look old-fashioned	يبدو موضة قديمة
available for	متاح لـ موجود لـ	provide a model for	يقدم نموذجا او قدوة لـ
bring up	يربي	be thought of as	فكر فيها كـ
collection of	مجموعة من	win a prize for	يفوز بجائزة لـ
come out = publish	ينشر - يوزع	work for a publisher	يعمل لدى ناشر
compete with	ينافس مع	write an article on	يكتب مقالة عن

Notes on Vocabulary

(1) **Custom customary customs customer Custome**

custom (s) (n)

عادة - عادات

»It's the custom in Egypt ..a bride to wear a white dress in her wedding

» We have a lot of local customs and traditions in Egypt.

customary (adj)

مألوف/ من العادة

»It is customary to offer our guests something to eat or drink.

customs

الجمرك (دائما جمع)

» Nora was asked about the laptop in customs, (by customs officers)

a customs officer

ضابط الجمرك

customer(s)

زبون

» Discounts are available for our regular customers.

costume(s)

زى / لباس (الملابس التى يرتديها المؤدون للعروض فى مسرحية او فيلم) زى مخصص
لحقبة معينة من التاريخ

» They were all dressed in 18th-century costume.

» She designs costumes for the theatre.

(2)

win

beat

gain

earn

Win (match- medal- prize- race- competition – game- election) يفوز بـ / يكسب

» Which party do you think will win the next election?

beat يهزم- يتغلب على (شخص او فريق).

» Enggland needed to beat Germany to get to the final.

gain يكتسب- يحصل على شىء معنوى (خبرة- وزن- سرعة- شهرة)

» They gained a lot of information during the conference.

» I've gained a lot of weight this winter.

earn

يكتسب رزق (من خلال العمل)

» He doesn't earn much money, but he enjoys the work.

» He works hard to earn his living.

(3)

publish

spread

prevail

Publish

ينشر (كتاب – مجلة – صحيفة)

» All these magazines are published by one organization.

spread

ينتشر - ينتشر.

» Rats and flies spread diseases.

» The fire spread rapidly because of the strong wind.

prevail

يسود – يعم

» In the end, justice prevailed and the men were set free.

(4) work job career profession

work عمل- مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد)

- » My father is not here. He is at work.
- » Much of the heavy work on farms is now done by machines.

Job وظيفة (اسم بعد)

(look for/ apply for/ find) a job

- » I've applied for several jobs but in vain.

career مهنة (الحياة العملية للفرد)

- » Choosing a career can be a very difficult decision.

profession مهنة (تحتاج الى مؤهلات وتدريب)

(the medical /القضية/ nursing/ teaching profession)

- » We admit that a few members of our profession have behaved badly.

(5) insist on Insist hot

insist on + v-ing / noun

- » He has insisted on his rights from the very beginning.
- » He insisted on paying the bill.

insist that + جملة

- » She insisted that we should stay at her house instead of a hotel.

(6) Habit custom

habit شخصية او فردية (شبه يومية)

- » It's my habit to run for an hour every morning.

Custom عادة مجتمع يمارسها الناس لفترات طويلة

- » Haqqi wrote in a new way about the Arab customs.

(7) diplomat politician

diplomat دبلوماسي

- » a diplomat is employed by the government in a foreign country to speak for the government.

Politician

رجل سياسة - سياسي

»Person who works in politics

(8)

Work

For يعمل لدى مؤسسة - شركة
With يعمل مع اشخاص - زملاء
as • يعمل كـ (يأتى بعدها وظيفة)
on (project - question) اى يقوم بدراسة

(9)

Award (v./ n.)

Reward (n)

prize

Award

يمنح

»In the Olympic games, the player who comes first is awarded a gold medal.

Reward

مكافأة

» I gave him a reward for finding my mobile.

Prize

جائزة نتيجة تنافس فى مجال ما

» She won a prize in a poetry competition.

Confusing Wdrds for choices and find the mistakes

Traditions	تقاليد (مجتمع)	habits	عادات (شخصية)
Retire	يتقاعد (عن العمل)	resign	يستقيل (من العمل)
Reward	١- يكافىء. ٢- مكافأة	award	١- يمنح (جائزة- وسام) ٢- جائزة/ وسام
Present	هدية	prize	جائزة
Politician	رجل سياسة (بالداخل)	Diplomat	دبلوماسي (بالخارج)
Experience	١- خبرة (لاتعد) ٢- تجربة (خبرة) حياة (تعد)	experiment	تجربة (علمية- عملية)
Routine	روتين يومى معتاد	red tape	روتين حكومى
Respect	يحترم/ احترام	Aspect	جانب/ مظهر
Check	يفحص	chock	وتد/ يثبت بسانده
Insist	يصر	Persist	يستمر
Collection	مجموعة	Collective	جماعي
rule	قاعدة	role	دور

Opposites :

Confusing	مربك / مشوش	Obvious	واضح
Fashionable	مساير للموضة	Unfashionable	غير مساير للموضة
Midday	منتصف النهار	Old-fashioned	موضة قديمة

Obey	يطيع	Midnight	منتصف الليل
Show	يبين / يوضح	Disobey	يعصى
Traditional	تقليدي	Hide	يخفي
Understand	يتفهم	Modern	عصري / حديث
		misunderstand	يسيء الفهم

Verbs A Prepositions

To			
adjust to	يتكيف او يتأقلم	attach ... to	يلحق / يوصل ... بـ
refer to	على يشير الى		
In			
give in	يستسلم	died w + year	مات في عام كذا
expert (in /on/ at)	خبير في	interested in	مهتم بـ
succeed in	ينجح في		
With			
happy with	سعيد بـ	(be) filled with	مملوءة بـ
exchange with	يتبادل مع شخص	fill with	يملأ بـ كذا ... كذا...
Into			
(be) made into	يتحول الى	change into	يتغير الى
For			
ask for	يطلب	responsible for	مسئول عن
available for	متوفر لـ		

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a-b-c or d:

1. On.....women live between five and seven years longer than men.

a. rate b. average c. centre d. middle

2. Doctors and nurses worked 18 hours without a.....because of the train accident.

a. break b. sleep c. holiday d. trip

3. Some of the questions he asked were very.....

a. puzzled b. amazed c- confused d- confusing

4. The noise.....her a headache yesterday.

- a. took b. made c. gave d- did**

5. Why do you.....on leaving your dirty clothes all over the floor?

- a. persist b. insist c. consist d. depend**

6. Now let's take a look at the main.....and international news.

- a. national b. nationality c. nationalistic d- native**

7. According to the newspaper.....the victim died of a knife wound.

- a. announcement b. account c. decision d. report**

8. Despite our many differences of.....we remained good friends.

- a. appearance b. form c. opinion d. height**

9. As he is good at computer skills, he .can.....40 words a minute.

- a. print b. type c. press d. write**

10- Fahmy gets his.....personality from his father, who was another great athlete.

- a- competitive b. competition c. compete d. comparative**

11- I'm a great.....fh healthy eating and exercise.

- a. believer b. believe c. belief d. believing**

12- Menna.....checks her work, so she does very well.

- a. rarely b. seldom c. routinely d. badly**

13-She spent most of her.....working in India.

- a. work b. career c. childhood d. job**

14- The internet gives you the opportunity to know people from different.....

- a houses b. rooms c. cultures d. streets**

15- He wrote a book about the.....he got during his trips in Africa.

- a. attempts b. tests c. experiment d. experiences**

16- He.....from Ain Shams University in 1970.

- a. graduated b. managed c. went out d. succeeded**

17- She is studying German language and.....

- a. mixture b. literature c. politeness d. picture**

18- Haqqi developed a new style of writing which is.....today.

- a. respectful b. respect c. respected d. respecting**

19-The novels of Naguib Mahfouz reflect the values of the Egyptian.

- a. hospital b. school c. factory d. society**

20- Everyone came to.....him in his campaign for justice.

- a. support b. let c. allow d. give**

21- The hotel has improved facilities for the.....there are new lifts and wheelchairs.

- a. poor b. disabled c. rich d. disable**

22-There's a lot of public.....about modern farming methods.

- a. hope b. concentration c. concern d. content .**

23- The minister's main objective is to.....educational systems.

- a. prove b. reduce c. approve d. improve**

24- The restaurant is now under new.....

- a management b. head c. manager d. organization**

25- I don't speak Russian, so someone will have to.....for me.

- a. write b. translate c. say d. tell**

26- I was shocked by his.....towards his family.

- i. personality b. appearance c. behaviour d. politeness**

27- Everyone is asked to express their own personal.....

- a. qualities b. certificates c. countries d. beliefs**

28- The soldiers are used to.....orders.

- a. obeying b. disobeying c. refusing d. agreeing**

29- Many women have abandoned their....role as wife and mother.

- a. fake b. traditional c. unusual d. imitative**

30- The boy is wrapping a/an.....for his mother.

- a. prize b. award c. present d. reward**

31-Soha wears her mother's dresses to parties because they are still.

a. unfashionable b. stylish c. old-fashioned d. style

32- Yunus is a regular.....of that shop because he likes the service.

a. custom b. consumer c. customer d. costutw

33- The.....of this charity was chiefly to assist orphans.

a. established b. establish c. establishment d. disestablh

34- Her artistic style has.....considerably since she began studying with us.

a. proved b. developed c, approved d. progressive

35. Soldiers returning from the war soon.....the disease through most of the region.

a. spread b. published c. prevailed d. sowed

student's book - Workbook – Longman Exercises – Previous Exams

36. I don't really have a.....during the holidays.

a. Red tape b. routine c. system d. rest

37. I really enjoyed this book. It is written in a very simple.....

a. steel b. styled c. style d. stylish

38. The sun is at its strongest at.....

a. midnight b. midyear c. afternoon d. midday

39. My friend and I are going to enter an athletics.....We hope to win

a. game b. quiz c. profession d. competition

40. I sent an email with two.....They were photos of my friends.

a. attachments b. connectors c. accessories d. connections

41. My sister loves clothes and buys very..... dresses.

a. fashionably b. fashion c. fashionable d. old-fashioned

42. Yehia Haqqi came from a poor.....of Cairo.

a. country b. district c. continent d. village

43. My brother wants to be a lawyer when he graduates, so he is studying.....at university.

- a. law b. medicine c. loyalty d. loneliness**

44. Scientists are paid to.....new medicines every year to help people,

- a. do b. have c. take d. develop**

45. His first job was as a.....

- a* lawless b. lawyer c. lawful d. law**

46. My parents gave me a.....of modern short stories for my birthday.

- a. chain b. collection c. collective d. serial**

47. A.....is someone who produce books, newspapers or magazines.

- a. publisher b. journalist c. writer d. editor**

48. Yehia Haqqi was an important twentieth-century.....

- a. writer b. master c, player d actor**

49. In my grandfather's village, they still follow the same traditional..... that he used to follow when he was a boy.

- a. customs b. habits c. consumes d. consumers**

50. The city has eight.....each with a representative on the City Council.

- a. distinctions b. disruptions c. districts d. dispul**

51. Hundreds of athletes from across the nation came to.....in the games.

- a. complete b. conflict c. compete d. delete**

52- It is ato greet someone when you meet them,

- a. routine b. custom c. prize d- customer**

53- Using a typewriter is.....Now we use computers.

- a. poetic b. vague c. ancient d. old0fashioned**

54- Dr. Fathi has performed a new type of surgery. He in his field.

- a. routine b. pioneer c. complication d- explorer**

55-This author uses long, complex sentences. That is her...of writing.

- a. routine b. pen c. fashion d. style**

**56-With his book Jacob's building A. El.Aswany has become
a/an.....author.**

- a. established b. fitalal c. eventual d. artistic**

**57-The.....of vaccines to prevent diseases has helped to save
many lives.**

- a. styling b. development c. establishment d. custom**

**58- When the.....requires you to follow a rule, you can
receive a penalty if you disregard it.**

- a. style b. law c. pioneer d. custom**

59- For Muslims, it is.....to eat dates to break a fast.

- a. legal b. pioneering c. routine d. customary**

**60-Dr Zewail is more than just a Noble prize winner; he's
a/an.....in chemistry.**

- a. investor b. explorer c. pioneer d. politician**

**Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then
write them correctly:**

1] A butcher speaks for people in the law court.

2] Defending your country is a nationalize duty.

3] Early black and white photos show people in fashion clothes.

4] Getting up at 7 a.m every day is my regular red tape.

5] He devoted his life to helping the poor and disability people.

6] He is very knowledgeable about the German lecture.

7] His teaching job ended when he retired.

8] I asked the mechanic to chock my car.

**9] Publish is to achieve or give someone a respected position in
society or in an organisation.**

10] It is a habit to eat salted fish on Sham EI-Naseem.

- 11] Magdi Yacoub was one of the first heart transplant pilots.
- 12] My sister loves clothes and busy very fashion dresses.
- 13] Scientists are paid to divine new medicines.
- 14] There was a horrible accident, t last 50 people were killed.
- 15] A trial is a way of doing or making something that is typical of a particular person, group or period.
- 16] We aspect him for what he has achieved in the field of medicine.
- 17] We're going to enter an athletics compete.
- 18] Yehia Haqqi was born in the Sayyida Zeinab city of Cairo.
- 19] Yehia Haqqi was thinking as the father of the modern short story.
- 20] A millionaire is one of the first people to do something that other people will continue to develop.

Translation

A) Translate into Arabic :

- 1) Egypt has always been known as the "Birthplace of Civilization" because of its long and rich history. It is also famous for its great writers and scientists such as Taha Hussein, Naguib Mahfouz, Yehia Haqqi and Ahmed Zewail. That's why, we should be keen on restoring our glories to keep pace with progress in developed countries.
- 2) People add to their knowledge daily by reading newspapers. Thirst for knowledge urges an uneducated man to buy a paper, where he finds his main source of information. On the other hand, a paper satisfies an educated man's desire to have up-to-date information about what is happening all over the world.

B) Translate into English:

- ١- لقد كتب نجيب محفوظ الكثير من الروايات التي ترجمت الى لغات عديدة.
- ٢- كان العلماء والمفكرين العرب تأثير كبير على الثقافة العربية.

٣- ان العمل الجماعى يقوى الروابط بين الناس ويرسخ القيم الانسانية بينهم.

٤- يعتبر يحيى حقى من رواد الادب المصري الحديث.

Translation skill

birthplace	مهد	Restore	يستعيد
glories	امجاد	keep pace with	يساير
urge	يدفع- يحث	Desire	رغبة
up-to-date	معاصر	Satisfy	يرضى
uneducated	غير مثقف	Developed	متقدمة- متطورة
teamwork	العمل الجماعى	Strengthen	يقوى
ties	الروابط	set up	يرسخ
among	بين	human values	القيم الانسانية

Language Focus

الماضى البسيط Past simple

Form التكوين	كل الضمانر+التصريف الثاني للفعل	I/He/They visited the museum
Negative النفى	didn't + inf + كل الضمانر	I/He/They didn't go to school
Interrogative الاستفهام	Did + كل الضمانر + inf ?	Did the police arrest the criminal?
Passive المجهول	Was/ were+ P.P	The criminal was arrested

Usage

1. For an action which happened at a definite time in the past.

يستخدم لحدث تم في وقت محدد فى الماضى.

* We went shopping and spent 3000 L.E last week.

2. For an action which happened immediately one after the other in the past.

للاحداث التى حدثت تباعالاً واحدا تلو الاخر فى الماضى (ليس هناك فارق زمنى لكى نستخدم الماضى التام)

* For an action which began and finished in the past.

يستخدم لحدث بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى

* My father worked'as a teacher for 30 years. (He no more works as a teacher)

4- For past habits which are now finished

يمكن استخدام used to للعادات التي كانت في الماضي ولم يعد لها وجود الآن.

* People travelled / used to travel on camels in the past.

5- For telling stories لسرد أحداث القصص

* When the thief tried to escape, the police attacked him bravely. In the end, he S arrested and sent to prison for life.

الكلمات الدالة عليه

yesterday , last night / week / month / year / Friday,...etc, two days / weeks / months ago ,then, when , How long ago...?, in 1990 / 2000 / 2012, the other day etc

Used to + inf

تستخدم للتعبير عن عادة كانت تحدث في الماضي ولالآن لم تعد تحدث في الوقت الحاضر.

- My father used to drive me to school when I was young.
- Osama used to drink a lot of coffee but now he doesn't.
- didn't use to have mobile phones in the past.

(get / be) used to + v-ing.

تستخدم للتعبير عن عادة كانت تحدث في الماضي وما زالت مستمرة حتى الوقت الحاضر.

- Ahmed is used to getting up early every day.
- school students are used to learning through games.

Past Contunuous الماضي المستمر

Form التكوين	Was/ were + ving	It was raining all night yesterday
Negative النفي	Wasn't/ weren't +ving	I wasn't reading when the light went out
Interrogative الاستفهام	Was/ were + الفاعل + ving?	What were you doing when you saw the accident?
Passive المجهول	Was/ e\were+ being + p.p	The room was being cleaned when Ali came.

Usage

a. For an action which was in progress at a definite time in the past.

يستخدم لحدث كان مستمرا في وقت محدد في الماضي.

* At five o'clock yesterday, they were waiting for the president's arrival.

b. For an action which was in progress when another action interrupted it.

يستخدم لحدث كان مستمرا (حدث طويل) عندما قطعه حدث آخر (حدث قصير)
الحدث الطويل يوضع (ماضي) مستمر والحدث القصير يوضع (ماضي) بسيط

* He was walking when he slipped on a banana skin.

4- For an action happening at the same time. حدثان في وقت واحد

* Ahmed was doing his homework while his father was reading the paper

The past continuous is used with the following time expressions:

when, while , as , all day / night / morning, Etc

حدثا كان مستمرا وآخر قطعة:

While ولاء و انتماء

+ *past continuous, past simple*

When خائنة و غدارة

While / As/ When / Just as she was cleaning the room, she found her ring.

حدثان مستمران في نفس الوقت دون ان يقطع احدهما الآخر:

While

Past continuous When

+ *past continuous*

• She found her ring while / when / as / just as she was cleaning the room.

• She was cleaning the room when she found her ring.

ولكى نصل الى اتقان هذا الزمن لابد ان تعلم ان الحدث المستمر يوضع (ماضي) مستمر والحدث القاطع يوضع (ماضي) بسيط مهما تغيرت الكلمة الدالة.

Enrich your knowledge :

While + past simple (was / were), past simple

• While I was ill, many people visited me.

While + v-ing . اذا لم يوجد فاعل

• * While cooking dinner, she burnt her hand.

• While in prison , he shared a cell with two other men.

During + noun = while + past cont.

- During his stay in London, he met many famous people.
حالة خاصة : تستخدم While فى المقارنة بين الاشخاص والمواقف والاشياء وبيان الاختلاف ولا يشترط الماضي
- While the most children learn to read easily, some need extra help.

<u>الماضى التام Past Perfect</u>		
Form التكوين	Had + p.p	By 9:30 p.m yesterday. I had gone to sleep
Negative النفى	Hadn't + p.p	I hadn't met him before he visited me.
Interrogative الاستفهام	Had + الفاعل + p.p	What had they done before going out?
Passive المجهول	Had been +p.p	By 3 o'clock yesterday, the gang had been arrested.

Usage

i. For an action which happened before another past action or before a stated time in the past.

يعبر عن حدث تم قبل حدث (ماضى) آخر او قبل وقت محدد فى الماضى ، الحدث الاول تام والثانى بسيط.

- * I punished him because he had made many mistakes.
- * I showed my father what I had bought from the market.

The past perfect is used with the following time expressions:

After/ As soon as / Before / By the time / till / until / No sooner /
Hardly / Barely / Scarcely / When / It was not until / It was only when

After	Past perfect, past simple
As soon as	+ After I'd done my work, I helped Ahmed.
Before	(Past simpk, past perfect.
By the time	.* Before I helped Ahmed, I'd done my work.

Notice

لكى تصل الى اتقان هذا الزمن لابد ان نعلم ان الحدث الاول (الاقدم) يوضع (ماضى) تام والحدث الثانى يوضع (ماضى)

- * As Soon as Many told me that Ihab had had an accident, I visited him at once.

لم نضع الماضى التام بعد as soon as مباشرة لانه ليس الحدث الاول وان الحدث الاول (الاقدم) هو عمل (حادثة)

* After she got to school, she realised that she had done the wrong homework.

لم نضع الماضى التام بعد After مباشرة لانه ليس الحدث الاول وان الحدث الاول (الاقدم) هو (عمل الواجب الخطأ).

لاحظ فى الجدول الاستخدامات المتعددة (when) اى زمن حسب المعنى When +

When	he reached the station, the train had left.	غادر القطار قبل وصوله (لم يلحقه)
When	he had reached the station, the train left.	غادر القطار بعد وصوله (اذن هو لحق به)
When	I had told him the bad news, he fainted.	اخبرته اولاً ثم اغمى عليه ثانياً
When	I met him for coffee, I had finished my work.	انتهيت من العمل اولاً ثم تقابلنا
When	I met Ali, I welcomed him.	المقابلة والترحيب فى وقت واحد
When	I phoned Ahmed, he was studying English.	المذاكرة مستمرة والاتصال قاطع
When	I was walking in the street, I met Omar.	المشى مستمر والمقابلة قاطع
When	I finish / have finished my work, I will help you.	عندما انتهى سأساعدك (مستقبل)

(ماضى) تام + till/ until + (ماضى) بسيط منفى

We didn't build the house until we had bought the land.

No sooner	than	لم يكدا
Hardly	when	past simple
Scarcely	when	

*- No sooner had he finished his work than he helped me.

لم يكدا ينتهى من عمله حتى ساعدنى
اذا جاءت هذه الكلمات فى اول الكلام تكون القاعدة السابقة واذا لم تأت فى اول الكلام يكون الاتى:

No sooner	than	
+ had + hardly + P.P	when	past simple
Scarcely	when	

He had hardly saved the money when he bought the car.

It was only when انه فقط عندما

It wasn't until لم يكن حتى (ماضي) + + that (ماضي) بسيط + + تام

It was only when he had taken permission that he left the room.

It wasn't until he had taken permission that he left the room.

**** Enrich your knowledge:**

After / before .+ v-ing اذا لم يأتي بعدها فاعل

- After booking the tickets, he took the train to Assuit = After he had booked.....
- Before taking the train to Assuit, he had booked the tickets = Before he took.....

Having + p.p = After + past

- Having done my homework, I helped my friend.

By (ماضي) تام + فترة في الماضي

- By yesterday, I had finished my project.

By مستقبل تام + فترة في المستقبل

- By tomorrow, I will have finished my project.

Exercises on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He.....home as soon as he had seen his brother off at the airport.

a-) reurns b) had returned c) will return d) returned

2.the letter after you had written it?

a) Had you posted b) Did you post
c) Have you posted d) Will you post

3. Ali's father.....to prison because he had got into debt.

a) go b) had gone c) went d) going

4. After I'd finished school, I.....English literature at university.

- a) study b) am studying c) have, studied d) studied

5. When I arrived at the station, the train.....so I didn't catch it.

- a) left b) would leave c) have left d) had left

6. I had finished my work before.....the office.

- a) left b) had left c) was leaving d) leaving

7. They decided to get married last week although they.....each other for only five months.

- a) has known b) had known c) know d) would know

8. She started her work when she.....the baby to bed.

- a) puts b) has put c) had put d) will put

9. Our block of flats.....five years ago.

- a) was built b) were built c) built d) had built

10.I.....played football for five years, but now I don't.

- a) have played b) played c) had played d) playing

11. Having.....my H.W. I went out.

- a) did b) done c) doing d) do

12. At the age of seven, my parents.....me to Jordan.

- a) are taking b) were taking c) took d) take

13. Someone phoned me-while I.....the dinner.

- a) cook b) was cooked c) am cooking d) was cooking

14. Something was wrong with his car, so he.....it to the garage.

- a) took b) has been taken c) was taken d) is being taken

15. Where did you.....to play when you were young?

- a) used b) using c) use d) uses.

16.I.....to a football match at the weekend.

- a) was taken b) took c) was taking d) had taken

17. Somebody phoned me while the dinner.....

- a) was cooking b) was being cooked
c) cooked d) had been cooked

18. By the age of five, Nesma.....to swim.

- a) is learning b) had learnt c)learns d)learnt

19. Hardly.....the book when he wrote a report about it.
a) he reads b) he read c) had he read d) he had read
20. Having.....the book when he wrote a report about it.
a) obtain b) had obtained c) obtained d) obtaining
21. When I was seven, I..... a poem which won a prize.-
a) is writing b) wrote c) have written d) written
22. While I was finishing one story, I.....of the next one.
a) thinking b) was thinking c) thought d) have thought
23. I used to.....very quickly.
a) be written b) write c) writing d) be writing
24. As soon as I.....a story, I sent it to the magazine editor.
a) 'd finished b) have finished c) was finishing d) finish
25. My last novelsix times.
a) was changed b) is changed c) changing d) changes
26. Yesterday my sister gave me a book she.....reading the day before.
a) finished b) has finished c) had finished d) finishes
27. The Parcel.....while I was reading the newspaper.
a) delivered b) delivers c) was delivered d) was being delivered
28. I used to football three years ago.
a) play b) have played c) was playing d) had played
29. Iat six o'clock yesterday evening.
a) slept b) was sleeping c) is suspecting d) suspected
30. The secretary left the office dfter.....the letters.
a) typed b) had typed c) typing d) was typing
31. Ithe newspaper every day. Now, I don't have the time.
a) used to read b) was reading c) had read d) have read
32. By the time we arrived at school, the first lesson.....
a) had begun b) began c) begins d) has begun
33. Ithe film before I read the book.
a) already saw b) have already seen
c) had already seen d) has already seen

34. Whatwhen I called you? You seemed very busy.

a) did you do b) were you doing c) are you doing d) have you done

35. While he was working as clerk for a judge, he..... himself as a great legal writer.

a) establishes b) established c) establishing d) has established

36] Zeinab's biographical account of her life.....by her brother Ahmed.

a) were written b) was written c) wrote d) had written

37] Fawzialready read some of Yehia Haqqi's writings before learning about him in class.

a) have b) had c) is d) was

38] Many of the students.....questions for the teacher before he arrived.

a)had prepared b) have prepared c) was preparing

d) been preparing

39] The children.....tails to their donkey pictures then hung them up.

a) are attaching b) have attached c) attached d) had attached

40] No sooner.....the noise than we rushed to the spot.

a) had we heard b) we hear c) we had heard d) we did hear

2-Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write, them correctly :

1. By the time Noha was ten months old, she learns to crawl.

2. I was doing my homework while my brother watched TV.

3. At 7 o'clock yesterday evening, I watched TV.

4. He didn't cut the material until he takes the measurements.

5. By the time I arrive work, the boss had started the meeting.

6. Many years ago, I use to enjoy playing on the beach.

7. Having playing the match, he returned home.

8. Before Adel played the semi final, he trains hard.

9. While I was coming to school today, I meet my friend, Omar.

10. He had found a space before parked his car.

11. We use to live in a small village in Upper Egypt.

12. While we are having a meeting at work, all the lights went out. 13.1 have finished my work a short time ago.

14. Eman had an accident as she is crossing the street.

15. Ahmed Zewail finishes his studies in the US in 1974.
16. No sooner they had played the match than they took the plane home.
17. I went to Bed but first I have revised my lesson.
18. When we went to the stadium, the match has already started.
19. Nahla goes shopping after she had cleaned her flat.
20. Our block of flats build ten years ago.
21. My parents use to live in a small flat in the city centre.
22. Yesterday evening, we revised for our English test when all the lights went out
23. Our school was opening exactly 25 years ago.
24. This novel was writing by Yehia Haqqi.
25. While Yusuf was waiting for the bus, it starts to rain.

Language Functions

Asking for and Expressing Opinions: السؤال والتعبير عن الرأي

<i>Asking for opinions</i>	<i>Giving Advice</i>
What do you think of Yehia Haqqi?	* I think he is great writer. • I'd say that he is a great writer. As far as I am concerned, they are useful.
Do you think newspapers play a role in our life?	In my opinion, they have a lot of benefits in our daily life.

Exercises on Language Functions

Respond to each of the following situations:

- 1- A friend asks your opinion about modern novels.
- 2- Someone asks you what you were doing at six o'clock yesterday evening.
- 3- Someone asks you what you think the best thing about short'stories. Give you opinion.
- 4- A friend asks you what you used to read when you were seven.

5- Someone says that short stories are more interesting than novels. You agree with them.

6- Your friend says that the match was exciting. You disagree.

Paragraphs

Write a paragraph

You have received an invitation from an international space agency وكالة فضاء to travel in space. The trip will take one month, however you can only take four things with you. Describe your feelings, tell us about the things you would take and why they are so necessary for you. Tell us about the first person you would tell about your trip and why you choose him / her.

The Answer

I can't deny that it would be very exciting if I received such an invitation to travel in space. First I'd ask for my parents and teachers advice. We'd think together about the most important things I'd take with me. As for me, I'd take five things which, in my opinion, would be useful in my trip: a telescope تليسكوب some books about space, a pen a notebook and some CDs music.

This trip would be the trip of my life. I'd take notes of whatever I'd see in space. I'd find out ,يتعرف على by myself how scientists would benefit from space researches ابحاث يستفيد من. After I come back to Earth, I'll devote يكرس my study دراسة and my time just for reading and doing research about space. I wish I could travel in space sortie day.

Previous Exams,-2003-2004

Translation

1) Water will have become one of our most serious problems. Demand water will increase ten times between now and 2050, and there could be serious shortages. Water could be the cause of war if we don't act now

سوف يصبح الماء واحدة من اخطر مشاكلنا ولنسوف يزداد الاحتياج للماء عشرة اضعاف من الان وحتى عام ٢٠٥٠ ولنسوف يتواجد نقص خطير ويمكن ان يكون الماء هو سبب الحرب اذا لم نتصرف من الان.

٥- يستخدم الطلاب المصريين اجهزة الكمبيوتر فى مدارسهم وسيكون ذلك اثره العظيم فى تقدم مصر.

* The Egyptian students are using computer sets in their schools and that will have a great effect on Egypt progress.

٦- كان للعلماء والمفكرين العرب تأثير كبير على الثقافة العربية.

* Arab scientists and thinkers had a great influence on western culture.

دطلب او طلب (n)(v) demand	نقص (n) shortage
مفكرين (n) thinkers	تأثير او يؤثر (v) (n) influence

3) A wise educational policy directs education towards fulfilling the needs of society. It also deals with its current and future problems. This leads to the welfare of both the individual and the society".

السياسة التعليمية الحكيمة تتوجه التعليم نحو اشباع احتياجات المجتمع كما انها ايضا تتناول المشاكل الحالية والمستقبلية وهذا يؤدى الى الرخاء لكلا من الفرد والمجتمع.

٥- من حقك ان تعبر عن رأيك بحرية لكن يجب ان تحترم الاخرين.

* You have the right to express your opinion freely, but you should respect the other,

٦- تقوم الجامعة المفتوحة بتوفير التعليم عن بعد لكثير من المواطنين من مختلف الاعمار.
The Open University provides distance learning for many citizens of different ages.

حكيم wise (adj)	ينجز fulfill (v)
سياسة policy (n)	التعليم عن بعد distance, learning

3) Poverty and social problems may lead some children to end up living in the streets. Sooner or later, street children will turn to a life of crime. The whole society should help these children grow up to become good citizens.

ربما يؤدى الفقر والمشاكل الاجتماعية ببعض الاطفال فى النهاية الى العيش فى الشوارع ، سوف يتجه اطفال الشوارع الى الجريمة ان اجلا او عاجلا، يجب ان يساعد المجتمع بأسره هؤلاء الاطفال للنمو لى يصبحوا مواطنين صالحين.

Test (4)

Language Functions

A- Respond to each of the following situations:

- 1- You would like to know your brother's opinion of the present you gave him.
- 2- Your friend asks your opinion of a film you watched.
- 3- Your sister thinks that the best way to revise is at night. You agree.
- 4- Your friend is wearing a new T-shirt. You like it very much.

B- Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following 3 mini-dialogues:

- | | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1} A: What are you doing right now?
 B: I'm finishing my homework.
 A: Could you help me clean the kitchen.
 B: Yes, of course. Just a minute, please.</p> | <p>Place:.....
Speaker A:.....
Speaker B:.....
Function:....</p> |
| <p>2} A: Can I help you, sir?
 B: Yes, I'd like to have these shirts washed and ironed, please
 A: How many are they?
 B: Three. When can I come to take them?
 A: Tomorrow afternoon, sir.</p> | <p>Place:.....
Speaker A:.....
Speaker B:.....
Function:....</p> |

C} Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We.....that Ahmed won the first prize.
a) told b) were telling c) had told
2. Nageuib Mhfouz's books.....into many languages.
a) have translated b) were translated
c) translated d) had translated
3. As soon as the photograph..... it was shown to his friend.
a) had been taken b) had taken
c) has been taken d) took
4. Dr Farouk El-baz is the world's greatest expert...remote sensing
a) with b) of c) on d) about

5. His first short story.....Yehia Haqqi as one of the great short story writers of the Arab world.

- a) developed b) did c) provided d) established**

6. Most students don't have a.....during holidays.

- a) protein b) routine c) valentine d) red tape**

7.I have a ten-.....Break for something to et at midday.

- a) minutes b) minute c) minute's d) minut**

8. In many villages in Egypt, people still have the same ... they had many years ago.

- a) customs b) habits c) stations d) costumes**

9. Magdi Yacoub was one of the first heart transplant.....

- a) captains b) players c) pioneers d) astron:**

10. My friend Mohamed has a good.....of novels and short stories.

- a) team b) competition c) connection d) collection**

11. Somebody phoned me while the dinner.....

- a) was being cooked b) was cooking
c) was cooked d)cooked**

12. The Romans.....Egypt nearly two thousand years ago.

- a) were captured b) had captured
c) have captured d) captured1**

13. Using the computer for a long time.....me a headache.

- a) does b) makes c) works d) gives**

14. We arrived late at the cinema. The film.....ten minutes before.

- a) began b) was beginning
c) had begun d) has begun**

15. When I was younger, I..... go swimming every day.

- a) usually b) used c) use d) used to**

16.Having...the plan for his new project, he asked the bank for a loan.

- a) complete b) had completed c) completing d) completed**

D. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

1. a publicizer is someone who produces books, newspapers, etc.
2. Yehia Haqqi was one of the priors of modern Egyptian literature.
3. Haqqi's story, The postman, was done into a film.
4. When we arrived at school, the first lesson began. Our teacher was very angry with us.
5. My brother has gone to Paris, he came back last week.
6. They haven't visited us since the last two years.

E- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Amy Tan is a Chinese American writer. She writes about the lives of second generation Chinese American. She was born in California in 1952, several years after her mother and father immigrated to San Francisco from China. Her father John, was an electrical engineer. When Amy was eight, her essay, "What the library means to me" won first prize. Her father died in 1967 from brain trouble as her brother. Tan has written several novels including "The Joy Luck Club", published in 1989. This novel has been translated into 15 languages, "The kitchen God's Wife" and "Saving Fish from Drowning". These deal with the difficulties mothers and daughters have in truly understanding one another. She also wrote a collection of non-fiction essays entitled The Opposite of Fate. Tan lived in New York with her husband, a lawyer whom she met and married in 1974. She received her bachelor's and master's degrees in English and linguistics,

1- Answer the following questions:

- 1- Where were Amy Tan's parents born?
- 2- What did she do when she was eight?
- 3- How did her father meet his end?

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Amy Tan was married when she was.....
- a) 25 b) 52 c) 22 d) 74

a) the Joy Lock Club b) The Kitchen God's wife
c) The Hundred Secret Senses d) Saving Fish from Drowning

Charles' was a professor with a huge house and a fortune. Today he lives in small caravan where there is only second-hand furniture. There are no signs that he was a rich man. He gets his clothes and other things from charity shops. This change is not a tragedy. Charles was happy to give the lifestyle of a rich man. He was tired of being a person who had everything and many people have nothir . He made the choice to give all his money away. He says it has brought him happiiness "A few years ago" "says Charles," I was a millionaire, but I knew there were a lot of hungry people in the world." So, he gave away all his money to charities, Where he had some left, he gave away small banknotes in the streets of local poor areas.

A) Answer the following questions:

- B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- a) a family**
- b) a huge house**
- c) everything in the world**
- d) only a little money**
- 2. Now Charles is very happy because.....**
- a) he is a millionaire**
- b) he has no money**
- c) he misses nothing**
- d) he lives in a small can**

The Reader (The Prisoner of Zenda)

5] A- Answer the following questions:

- 1- What is Sapt's plan to save the throne?
- 2- What will happen if Duke Michael becomes the King?
- 3- Why do Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz go to the station early instead of waiting for Luke's guards?
- 4- Why is Rassendyll afraid when he sees Antoinette de Mauban?

B- Reade the following quotation, then answer the questions:

"Nothing else would wake you up. It's five o'clock"

- 1- Who says this? To whom?
- 2- Why does the speaker say that?
- 3- What purpose makes the speaker wake him up?

C- Find the mistake m each of the following sentences and correct:

- 1- Antoinette de Mauban and Josef serve the King and his friends in the hunting lodge.
- 2- Rudolf Rassendyll agrees to take the king's place although it is a pleasure.

Writing

8- Letter writing :

Write a paragraph of about 100 words about:

"The role of literature in our society."

1- A- Translate into Arabic:

World civilization owes a great deal to the Arabs. This is a fact universally acknowledged. The Arabs translated the Greek works and made their own contributions in every field of knowledge. Western scholars were influenced by the contributions made in the fields of chemistry, mathematics, astronomy and medicine.

A- Translate into English:

- ١ - لقد كتب نجيب محفوظ الكثير من الروايات التي ترجمت الى لغات عديدة.
- ٢ - من الطبيعي ان تكون لمصر علاقات قوية مع كل الدول لانها دولة رائدة فى كل المجالات.

Unit (5)

Agatha Christie: N or M?

Listening Text

Presenter	:Welcome to The Book Programme. Today, our subject is the queen of English crime fiction, Agatha Christie. You may never have read any of her books, but you probably know her name, to tell us more about her, we have professor Dunn from London University. Professor, could you tell us about Agatha Christie's life?
Prof .Dunn	Well, Agatha Miller was born in 1890 and was the youngest of three children. She was a shy child who was very close to her family. She didn't go to school, but was taught at home by her mother. She started writing at a very young age and wrote all her life.
Presenter	Was she only a writer?
Prof.Dunn	No. During the First World War she worked as a nurse, and while she was looking after wounded soldiers, she learned about medicines and poisons information that was later her writing.
Presenter	And when was her first novel written?
Prof .Dunn	In 1920, soon after the war ended.
Presenter	I remember reading that Agatha Christie was deeply affected by the death of her mother. Can you tell us about that?
Prof.Dunn	Yes; when her mother died in 1926, Christie disappeared for about a week Nobody knew where she was. Later, she could remember nothing about the week and is thought to have

	suffered from amnesia. Soon after this Christie started travelling abroad. Her first journey, on the Orient Express train, was to Baghdad and the ancient city of Ur. On her second trip, she met the archaeologist Max Mallowan, whom she later married. She became very interested in archaeology and worked with her husband on excavations around Iraq. It's reported that she cleaned and repaired some of the things that were round herself.
Presenter	Some of her books are based on her travels to these countries, aren't they?
Prof.Dunn	Yes, including famous novels like Murder on the Orient Express, Death on the Nile and Death Comes at the End, a dark story of a family in Ancient Egypt.
Presenter	And she continued writing all her life, didn't she?
Prof.Dunn	Yes, she did. In all she wrote eighty crime stories, many of which were turned into films or theatre plays. Her most famous play is The Mousetrap, which was first performed in 1952. since then, the play has been performed without a break and is the longest-running play in the world.
Presenter	That's incredible!
Prof.Dunn	It is. Her best books have been published in over a hundred countries and translated into over forty languages. Agatha Christie died, aged 85, in 1976

a) Answer the following: -

1- How could Agatha's experience during the second world help her later in her writing?

.....

2-What was the name of Agatha's husband ?

.....

3- How many brothers did Agatha have?

.....

b) Choose the correct answer:-

5- Agatha was so much influenced by the death of.....

d) her father b) her brother c) her husband d) her mother

6- The opposite of fiction is.....

d) imagination b) reality c) dreams d) fairy tales

Vocabulary on Listening

affect (v)	يؤثر على	Mousetrap (n)	مصيدة الفئران
effect (n)	تأثير	murder (n)	جريمة قتل
amnesia (n)	فقدان الذاكرة	murderer (n)	قاتل
archaeology	علم الآثار	murderous (adj)	مميّ / مهلك
archaeologist (n)	عالم الآثار	Nurse (n)	ممرضة
close to (adj)	بالقرب من	Nursing (n)	التمريض
crime fiction (n)	ادب الجريمة	Orient (n)	شرق
death (n)	موت	oriental (adj)	شرقي
Dead (adj)	ميت	perform (v)	يؤدي عروضاً
deeply (adv)	بعمق	performance (n)	اداء / عرض
deliberately (adv)	عمدا	Play (n)	مسرحية
Devic (n)	جهاز / آلة	Poison (n)	سم
Disappear (v)	يختفي	poisonous (adj)	سام
disappearance	اختفاء	robably (adj)	من المحتمل
Excavation(n)	حفر / تنقيب	Queen (n)	ملكة
Excavate	يحفر	Shy (adj)	خجول
Express (adj) (v)	سريع - يعبر عن	Shyness (n)	حياء / خجل
Include (v)	يتضمن / يشتمل	Shyly (adv)	بحياء
Inclusion (n)	تضمن / اشتمال	soldiers (n)	جنود
Incredible (adj)	لايصدق	suffer from (v)	يعانى من
Information (n)	معلومات	travel agent (n)	وكيل سفرات
Inform (v)	يخبر	wounded'(adj)	مجروح
Later (adv)	بعد ذلك - لاحقا	wound (v)	يجرح



It is a time of war in England and everyone knows that there could be an invasion at any time. The government knows that the enemy is being helped by a dangerous group of spies inside the country, but nobody knows their identity. But it is believed that the spies headquarters are a small hotel on the coast, and the spies

leaders are a man and a woman.

Two secret agents, Tommy Beresford and his wife Tuppence, are sent to the hotel to find these spies. They meet the other hotel guests and the people from the town. The guests include Mr Bletchley, a retired soldier; Mrs. Sprot, a shy young woman; and Carl Von.Deinim, a scientist. Mr. Bletchley introduces Tommy to

Mr. Haydock, a retired sailor who lives in a house overlooking the sea. The three men sometimes play golf together.

The Beresford's first suspects are the hotel owner and the scientist, but they soon discover that both are innocent. Then they hear that the invasion is planned for the following week. This means they have seven days to find the enemy and save the country from invasion.

One day, after a game of golf, Tommy finds a radio transmitter hidden in Mr. Haydock's bathroom and realizes that Haydock is one of the spies. Haydock does not seem worried by Tommy's discovery. Tommy leaves his friend's house, but on the way-back to his hotel, he is captured and locked in a room.

Tuppence discovers the other spy leader. To everyone's surprise, it is the shy Mrs Sprot. The police arrest her and soon find Mr. Haydock. Tommy is set free.

Without the help of the spies' leaders, the invasion cannot take place. Tommy and Tuppence have saved the country!

a) Answer the following: -

1- Who are the two secret agents ?

.....

2- What was their mission ?

.....

3- What did Tommy find in Mr. Haydock's bathroom?

.....

b) Choose the correct answer:-

4-The invasion was planned to take place within.....

a)fortnight b) 6 days c) 9 days d)7 days

5-Working as a spy in foreign Country could be very

a) interesting b) boring c) dangerous d) funny

Vocabulary on Reading

arrest (v)	يقبض على	leave (v)	يترك / يغادر
bathroom (n)	الحمام	overlook (v)	يطل
capture (v)	يأسر	owner (n)	صاحب مالك
coast (n)	ساحل	plan (n)	يخطط/ خطة
discovery (n)	اكتشاف	realise (v)	يدرك
enemy (n)	عدو	retired (adj)	متقاعد
enmity (n)	عدواة	save (v)	يحمي/ يوفر
golf (n)	لعبة الجولف	secret agents (n)	عملاء سريون
guests (n)	ضيوف/ نزلاء	seem (v)	يبدو
headquarters (n)	مركز/ مقر القيادة	set free (v)	يحرر/ يطلق سراح
hidden (adj)	مختبيء	spies (n)	جواسيس
identity (n)	هوية / شخصية	* spy (v) spied	يتجسس
* identify (v)	يتعرف على	surprise (n)	دهشة
innocent (n)	بريء	*surprising (adj)	مدهش
* innocence (n)	براءة	* surprised (adj)	مدهش/ متعجب
invasion (n)	غزو	suspects (n)	مشتبه بهم
invade (v)	يغزو	suspect (v)	يشك في
leader (n)	قائد	transmitter (n)	جهاز ارسال
* leading (adj)	قيادي	* transmit (v)	يبث/ يرسل
leadership (n)	قيادة/ زعامة	war (n)	حرب
actors (n)	ممثلون	leaderless (adj)	بلا قائد
blind (adj)	اعمى	member (n)	عضو
characters (n)	شخصيات	* membership (n)	عضوية
compare (v)	يقارن	message (n)	رسالة
* comparison (n)	مقارنة	mice (n)	فئران (جمع فأر)
crime (n)	جريمة	notice (v)	يلاحظ

* criminal (n)	مجرم	partner (n)	شريك
enable (v)	يمكن	patient (adj)	صبور
escape (v)	يهرب	patriotic (adj)	وطني
intelligent (adj)	ذكي	Patriot	وطنية
intelligence (n)	ذكاء	* patriotism (n)	صفات
		qualities (n)	

Workbook

bang (v)	يخبط/ يضرب بشدة	nervous (adj)	عصبي/ قلق
design (v)	يصمم/ يخطط	organization (n)	منظمة
dig (v)	يخفر	project (n)	مشروع
Embarrassed	مرتبك/ محرج	recent (adj)	حديث/ جديد
equipment (n)	معدات/ تجهيزات	recommendation (n)	توصي/ نصيحة
feed (v)	يطعم/ يغذي	signals (n)	اشارات
foreign (adj)	اجنبي	taste (v)	يتذوق
guilty (adj)	مذنب	trap (n)	مصيدة/ فخ
hurt (v)	يؤذي/ يجرح/ يضر	shame	عار/ خزي

Definitions :

amnesia	فقدان الذاكرة	the medical condition of not being able to remember anything.
excavation	حفر/ تنقيب	digging up the ground, especially in order to find things from the past.
headquarters	مركز القيادة	the place from which a company, organisation or military action is controlled.
identity	هوية	who someone is
innocent	بريء	not guilty of a crime.
invasion	غزو	the act of entering a country using military force in order to take control.
mousetrap	مصيدة الفئران	a device for catching, and usually killing mice.
murder	حريمة قتل	the crime of deliberately killing someone.
poison	سم	a substance that can kill or harm you if you eat it

secret agent	عميل سري	someone who works for a government and tries to get secret information about another country or organisation.
shy	خجول	nervous and embarrassed about talking to other people.
spy	جاسوس	someone whose job is to find out secret information about a country or organisation.
suspect (n)	مشكوك فيه/مشتبه به	someone who may be guilty of a crime.
transmitter	جهاز ارسال	a piece of equipment that sends out radio or television signals.

Phrases, Expressions & Idioms

(be) deeply affected by	يتأثر تأثراً عميقاً بـ	pass on information	ينقل معلومات
At a young age	في سن صغيرة	perform a play	يمثل مسرحية
At any time	في أي وقت	solve a problem	يحل مشكلة
come about	يحدث	take turns	يتبادل الأدوار
do/ (commit) a crime	يرتكب جريمة	the longest-running play	مسرحية تعرض لأطول فترة
get information about	يحصل على معلومات عن	to everyone's surprise	لدهشة الجميع
Give advice to	يعطي النصيحة لـ	transmit message to	يُبث/يرسل رسالة لـ
Make a plan	بعد خطة	with the help of	بمساعدة
make changes to	يجري تغييرات على	work on a crime	يعمل على حل الجريمة
on (his) way to	في طريقة إلى	work on excavation	يعمل في التقيب
on his first journey	في رحلته الأولى		

Notes on Vocabulary

(1) Shy (of) Embarrassed Ashamed(of/about) shameful

Shy لديه حياء- خجول (نقص الثقة وهي طبع)

»Ahmed feels shy at parties. (He is shy of strangers).

embarrassed = very uncomfortable يشعر بالحرج/ محرج

»I felt so embarrassed when I spilt coffee on their beautiful carpet.

Ashamed يشعر بالخزي / خجلان (غير سعيد من عمل شيء مجز)

»The girl worked as a spy for a foreign agency and feels ashamed of/ about her past.

معيب/ مشين/ فاضح (شئ يجعل الانسان يفقد احترام الآخرين) shameful

»I can't excuse such shameful behavior.

(2)

include	contain	consist (of)	enclose
---------	---------	--------------	---------

include يشمل / يتضمن (عادة في قوائم)

»The price includes dinner, bed and breakfast.

Contain يحتوى على (داخل شئ)

»There were four boxes containing toys and books.

consist (of) يتكون من

»Breakfast consisted of dry bread and a cup of tea.

enclose يرفق (بداخل خطاب/ طرد مثلا) يحيط بسور

»He sent me a letter and enclosed is photo with it.

»The swimming pool was enclosed by a high fence.

(3)

Affect	Effect	effective
--------	--------	-----------

affect (v) + object يؤثر على (بدون حرف جر)

» Did the newspapers really affect the outcome of the election?

effect + on (n) تأثير (يأتى بعدها حرف جر يعطى معنى على)

مفعول + has / have + an + effect + on + فاعل

» Any change in lifestyle will have an effect on your health.

The effect of.....on تأثير شئ على

» We can't deny the effect of the computer on everyone's life.

effective (adj) مؤثر

» The medicine is very effective.

(4)

Trip	Journey	Voyage	flight
------	---------	--------	--------

trip رحلة سريعة (الذهاب الى مكان والعودة منه)

» I'm just back from a business trip, رحلة مؤقتة وليست بالضرورة قصيرة

trip لاحظ ان كلمة business نأخذ دائما

» He's just returned from a fishing trip to Aswan.

journey رحلة سفر/ (هو السفر من مكان الى اخر) (خاصة السفر طويلا برا)

» They now faced a twelve-hour train journey.

voyage رحلة بحرية

» The ship sank on its first voyage.

flight رحلة جوية

» What was the direction of the flight when the plane crashed?

(5) Decide on Decide to Decide that

decide on + noun يختار

» they decided on a name for the baby.

decide to + inf يقرر ان

» he decided to stay and see what would happen.

decide that + جملة يقرر ان

I decided that it would be best to tell Hady everything.

(6) invade attack raid conquer

invade يغزو

» They invaded the country with tank and guns.

attack يهاجم/ هجوم (استخدام القوة لايقاع الضرر بانسان او حيوان او مكان)

» The terrorists attacked before midnight.

raid يغير على/ غارة

» Soldiers carried out raids غارات on enemy targets in the area.

conquer يفتح بلد/ يستولى على

» Napoleon's ambition was to conquer Europe.

Confusing words for choices and find the mistakes

Alone	بمفرده	lonely	وحيدا (يشعر بالوحدة)
Suspect	١- يشك/ يشتبه بـ (فعل) ٢- مشتبه/ مشكوك به (اسم)	suspicious	مرتاب/ شكال (صفة)
accommodation	اقامة	recommendation	توصية
mousetrap	مصيدة فئران	moustache	شارب (رجل)
Improve	يحسن/ يتحسن	prove / remove	يثبت/ يزيل
Express	١- سريع (صفة) ٢- يعبر عن (فعل)	impress compress	يوثر/ يطبع فى الذهن يضغط/ يكبس
headquarters	المقر/ المركز الرئيسي (يتبعها فعل مفرد او جمع)	headmaster	ناظر المدرسة

Invade	يغزو	deviate / invite	ينحرف / يدعو
Identify	يتعرف على	liquefy	يسيل
Coast	ساحل	cost	تكلفة
Trap	فخ / مصيدة	trip	رحلة
war	حرب	wore	ارتدى I wear ماضي
short	شاطيء	beach	البلاج

opposites

peace	سلام	war	حرب
capture	يأسر	set free	يطلق سراح
death	موت	life	حياة
deeply	بعمق	superficially	سطحياً
deliberately	عمداً	accidentally	بالمصادفة / عرضاً
incredible	لا يصدق	credible	مصدق / معقول
innocent	بريء	guilty	مذنب
shy	خجول	outgoing	اجتماعي / منطلق
sooner	حالا / عاجلاً	later	بعد ذلك / أجلاً

Verbs & Preposition

On			
based on	قائم على	get on	يركب (وسيلة مواصلات)
from			
Different from	مختلف عن	suffer from	يعانى من
Save...from	ينقذ..من		
For			
plan for	يخطط من اجل	work for	يعمل لحساب (شخص/شركة)
With			
atch up with	يساير / يواكب	Keep up with	يساير / يواكب
work with	يعمل مع شخص		
Of			
Instead of	بدلاً من	deprive of	يحرّم من
In			
iterested in	مهتم بـ	locked in	محبوس فى

About			
Bring about	يجلب/يسبب/ يحدث	Discover...about	يكتشف شيئاً عن
Find out about	يكتشف شيئاً عن		
Other prepositions			
Close to	قريب من يغادر او ينزل		يتحول الى
Close off	من وسيلة مواصلات		

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

-is the study of ancient societies, done by looking at tools, bones, buildings, et
 - Biology
 - Astronomy
 - Psychology
 - Archaeology
- Agatha Christie is the queen of English crime.....
 - film
 - mission
 - fiction
 - section
- Police believe the fire in the factory was started.....by criminal.
 - accidently
 - deliberately
 - deliberate
 - natural
- Egyptian policemen are investigating the crime of the couple whowhile being on holiday in Luxor.
 - disappeared •
 - walked
 - hide
 - hidden
- This parcel was sent by.....post. It arrived quickly.
 - slow
 - orient
 - expression
 - express
- The price of the holiday.....the flight, the hotel and taxes.
 - consists
 - encloses
 - include
 - constitutes
- This factory was built only in a year, which seems absolutely.....
 - usual
 - incredible
 - possible
 - credible
- The report said the.....of the school band was wonderful.
 - performance
 - training
 - experience
 - admission

9. You shouldn't feel.....all the time - you've done nothing to be ashamed of.

- a. innocent b. guilty c. happiness d. innocence**

10. Osama often.....from severe headaches.

- a. complains b. suffers c. comes d. prevents**

11. I make about 20 business.....a year.

- a. trips b. journeys c. picnics d. voyages**

12. The.....men were taken to hospital.

- a. wound b. wandered c. wondered d. wounded**

13. The lion was.....and taken back to the zoo.

- a. killed b. captured c. fired d. hold**

14. I'm glad I've got him as a friend, not an

- a. ambitious b. envious c. enemy d. elderly**

15. This hotel has accommodation for 500.....

- a. hosts b. students c. stewardess d. guests**

16. He is widely acknowledged to be a world.....in his field.

- a. lead b. leading c. leader d. leadership**

17. Our hotel.....the Temple of Luxor and the river.

- a. looks b. overlooks c. locks d. blocks**

18. At the age of 83, she finally.....from the public life.

- a. sat b. stayed c. retired d. left**

19. The hostages have been.....after 34 days in captivity.

- a. arrested b. set free c. imprisoned d. captured**

20. To my..... the boss agreed to let me leave work early.

- a. enjoy b. sadness c. surprise d. Surprised**

21.....is a strong feeling of love, respect and duty towards your country!

- a. Romance b. Engagement c. Patriotism d. Heroism**

22. Many social changes that have been....about by new technology
a taken b. given c. spent d. brought

23. The new law has.....more women to return to work.
a. able b. capable c. enabled d. ability

Studeht's Book-Workbook- Longman Exercises-Prevrous Exams

24. Agatha Christie never went to school. Instead she was.....by her mother.

a. learnt b. known c. taught d. famous

25. On her first journey on the.....Express, Agatha visited Baghdad

a. Oriental b. Orient c. Orientation d. Oriented

26. "The Mousetrap" is the longest-running.....in the world.

a. device b. play c. machine d. net

27. Agatha Christie's books have been....into over forty languages.

a. translated b. spoken c. moved d. went

28. Many children are.....about talking to their teacher when they first to school.

a. shameful b. shy c. faulty d. ashamed

29. All the fish in the river died. Someone must have put.....In the water.

a. antibiotic b. poison c. food d. ink

30. A man has been found dead in the road. The police think it was accident, not.....

a. a mtirderer b. a sin c. a murder d. a criminal

31. He banged his head and is now suffering from.....

a. dermatitis b. diabetes c. hunger d. amnesia

32. After they saw the mouse, they decided to put a...in the kitchen.

a. moustache b. mousetrap c. mouthwash d. mousiness

33. Archaeologists are planning a new....in the south of the country

a. excavation b. headquarters c. project d. tower

**34. Police are looking for someone who stole a car yesterday.
The.....is a man in his forties.**

a. suspect b. suspicion c. prisoner d. victim

35.They are using a very powerful.....to send signals to the astronauts

a. tricycle b. computer c. transmitter d. compass

36. Working as a.....in a foreign country can be a very dangerous

a. spy b. doctor c. politician d diplomat

**37. In many countries, people have to carry an.....card to prove
who they are.**

a. identical b. identify c. identifying d. identity

38. In Britain in 1940. People were afraid of an.....by the enemy.

a. invade b. invasion c. conquer d. raid!

**39. We saw a lot of photographs, but we couldn't.....the man
we'd met.**

a. identity b. identical c. identify d. identification

40. The enemy used radios to.....messages to their ships.

a. transplant b. transport c. transmit d. transform

41. The Romans.....Britain in 43 B.C.

a. invaded b. invasion c. raid d. reclaimed

42. How did the man prove his.....?

a. innocent b. innocence c. freedom d. liberty

**43. They.....that the driver had been going very fast at the time
of the accident.**

a. satire b. suspire c. suspicion d. suspected

44. Please,.....which book is yours?

a. idealize b. identify c. irritate . d. illegalize

**45.You'll find the company.....in the new business park
down the road.**

a. headquarters b.traps c. quarts d. suspects

46. Tommy and Tuppence Beresford are.....

- a. suspects b. secret agents c. soldiers d. solutions**

47. How can I send the signal if the.....is broken?

- a. trap b. poison c. prison d. transmitter**

48. A simple.....has a spring catch and can be baited with cheese.

- a. poison b. mousetrap c. spy d. science fiction**

49. When Ali was younger, he was not talkative because he was.....

- a. hot b. excavating c. spying d. shy**

50. After the accident I couldn't remember anything because I had

- a. invasion b. atom c. amnesia d. side effects**

51. There are many new discoveries from the.....around Luxor.

- a. excavations b. archaeology c. travel agent d. adquarters**

52. Sameh was on trial because he was.....of spying.

- a. Suspected b. supposed c. transmitted d. invaded**

53. Tiger, our dog, was.....in the yard for his bone.

- a. researching b. excavating c. looking d. finding**

54. Avoid snakes because they may be.....

- a. poison b. infectious c. poisonous d. affected**

55. The little girl.....took the candy from Aunt Mono.

- a. shyly b. shy c. shyness d. ashamed**

56. This..... schedule is killing me as there is no time but work.

- a. murder b. killer c. shooter d. murderous**

57. To overcome her.....she read many books and now she can spent on any subject.

- a. shyness b. bravery c. shy d. afraid**

58. The medical condition of not being able to remember anything is called.....

- a. megalomania b. insomnia c. amnesia d. phobia**

59. All the Egyptians should co-operate to save the country from any foreign.....

a. evaluation b. invasion c. excavation d. exploration

60. He did nothing wrong. He's.....

a suspect b. guilty c. innocent d. sensible

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

- 1. A thermometer is an equipment that sends radio signals.**
- 2. A detective is a person you think may have done a crime.**
- 3. Cheerful means nervous and embarrassed about talking to other people.**
- 4. Everyone was staring at me and I really felt impressed.**
- 5. Seology is the study of the buried remains of ancient times.**
- 6. He committed a number of criminals in the area.**
- 7. you need more effect communication within the organization.**
- 8. He is very ashamed about singing in public.**
- 9. He put a moustache in the kitchen to catch mice.**
- 10. He used a false identify to escape from the police.**
- 11. He was set free because he proved to be innocence.**
- 12. How did the man improve his innocence?**
- 13. I don't know what to choose. What is your accommodation?**
- 14. In everyone's surprise, he left the party without saying anything.**
- 15. Medicine is a substance that can kill or harm you if you eat it. drink it.**
- 16. Invention is the act of entering a country using military force.**
- 17. Remembering the medical condition of not being able to remember anything.**
- 18. She never went to school. Installed she was taught at home.**
- 19. She took the impress train to London.**

20. She's always close on her neighbours.
21. The company's headmasters is in Rome.
22. The man s strange behaviour made the police jealous of him.
23. The police found out that the man was guilty of the crime, so they released him.
24. The prisoner will be sit free next week.
25. The winners feel ashamed when they receive medals.
26. We saw a lot of photographs, but we couldn't liquefy the man we'd met.
27. Many of Naguib Mahfouz s stories are based about true stories or characters.
28. Eight people, enclosing two children, were injured in the explosion.
29. He is a tired sailor who lives in a house overlooking the sea.

Translation

A) Translate, into Arabic'

- 1) Overpopulation in Egypt has led to many other problems like illiteracy, heavy traffic and unemployment. The government should exert more efforts to bring down the population growth rates. It should also pay more attention to the development of human resources.
- 2) Egypt does its best to attract Arab and foreign capital for investment in the field of industry. We encourage the establishment of new industries as well as expanding the existing ones. Due attention has been given to introduce software and communication industries.

B) Translate, into English'

- ١ - تعتبر اجاثا كريستى احد اهم رواد قصص الجريمة فى الادب الانجليزى.
- ٢ - يجب ان يتوقف الناس عن التدخين لانه يبدد المال ويدمر الصحة ويسبب الوفاة.

٣- على كل فرد فى مجتمعنا ان يشارك فى تحمل المسؤولية للتغلب على مشكلاتنا الاجتماعية والاقتصادية والبيئية.

٤- موقع مصر الجغرافى المتميز وآثارها الرائعة جعلها واحدة من اهم الدول السياحية فى العالم.

TRANSLATION SKILL :

overpopulation	الزيادة السكانية	Illiteracy	الانمية
unemployment	البطالة	Efforts	مجهودات
growth rates	معدلات النمو	human resources	الموارد البشرية
capital	راس المال	Investment	الاستثمار
expanding	توسيع	Software	برامج الكمبيوتر
waste	يبدد	bear responsibility	يتحمل المسؤولية
economic	الاقتصادية	Brilliant	المتميز

Lanauaae Focus

The Passive

Object + المفعول + verb to (be) + P.P + subject الفاعل

نستخدم صيغة المبني للمجهول عندما:

- ١- لا نعرف من قام بالفعل.
- ٢- لا نهتم بمن قام بالفعل.
- ٣- للعلم بالفاعل فلا داعى لذكره

خطوات تحويل الجملة من معلوم الى مجهول

- ١- المفعول به يصبح فاعل
- ٢- الفاعل الاصلى يصبح في P.P التصريف الثالث

- ٢- نستخدم verb to be فى نفس زمن الجملة. ٤- الفاعل يوضع بعد كلمة by ان لزم الامر
- ** لاحظ الازمنة المختلفة فى الجدول التالى: (للمبنى للمجهول)**

2- Present simple مضارع بسيط (am / is / are) + P.P	Active: He <u>follows</u> the orders. Passive: The orders are followed by him
3- Present continuous مضارع مستمر (am / is / are) being + P.P	Active: I <u>am typing</u> the letter now. Passive: The letter <u>is being typed</u> now.
4- Past simple ماضى بسيط (was / were) + P.P	Active: We <u>bought</u> the carpets. Passive: The carpets were bought by us.

5- Past Continuous ماضى مستمر (was / were) being + P.P	Active: He was answering the questions. Passive: The questions <u>were being answered</u> .
6- Present Perfect مضارع تام (has / have) been + P.P	Active: He <u>has made</u> mistakes. Passive: Mistakes <u>have been made</u> .
7- Past Perfect ماضى تام Had been + P.P	Active: Someone <u>had stolen</u> her jewels. Passive: Her jewels <u>had been stolen</u> .
8- Future simple مستقبل بسيط Will be + P.P	Active: They <u>will sell</u> the old car. Passive: The old car <u>will be sold</u> .
9- Future perfect مستقبل تام will have been + P.P	Active: He <u>will have done</u> the job. Passive: The job <u>will have been done</u> .
10- Modals <u>أفعال ناقصة</u> be + P.P	Active: You <u>can, accept</u> the invitation. Passive: The invitation <u>can be accepted</u> .

Passive constructions starting with it.....

* الأفعال الاتية تحول بطريقتين الى المجهول :

٢- طريقة الفاعل الثانى

١- طريقة It

* يستخدم صيغة المبني للمجهول عندما:

Active- people think that money brings happiness.

يعتقد الناس ان المال يجلب السعادة وهذا اعتقاد عام وعند المجهول يكون المعنى يعتقد ان المال يجلب السعادة فتكون الجملة:

Passive:

Active: people think that money brings happiness.

يعتقد الناس ان المال يجلب السعادة وهذا اعتقاد عام وعند المجهول يكون المعنى يعتقد ان المال يجلب السعادة فتكون الجملة:

a) It is thought that money brings happiness.

فى الطريقة الاولى لم نغير الا الفعل Think

b) Money is thought to bring happiness .

فى الطريقة الثانية نبدأ بالفاعل التالى يحول think للمجهول ثم نضع (مصدر + to)

Active- Journalists report that food prices increased by 10% last year.

Passive:

a) It is reported that food prices increased by 10% last year.

b) Food prices are reported to have increased by 10% last year.

فى الطريقة الاولى لم نغير الا الفعل report

عند البدء بالفاعل الثانى food prices فاننا نحول report الى المجهول ثم نضع + have + to P.P اذا كان الفعل الثانى ماضيا.

ملاحظات عامة على المجهول

١- إذا كانت الجملة المبنية للمعلوم منفية يجب نفي المبنى للمجهول:

- You can't park your car in this place.
- Your car can't be parked in this place.

إذا كانت الجملة تبدأ بـ (No one- Nobody) تحول ever الى Never ان وجدت وفي عدم وجودها تنتفى بـ (not)

- Nobody has ever explored this island.
- * This island has never been explored.
- Nobody in the town has beaten Khalid at chess.
- Khalid hasn't been beaten at chess.

٣- تستخدم التركيبات الآتية كما هي مضافا اليه (be + P.P)

- have to , has to, had to, will have to.
needn't, seem to, appear to, used to
(be) going to, (be) bout to, (be) supposed to } *be + P P*
- Yasmeeen has to change this dress today.
 - * This dress has to be changed today.
 - Alia is supposed to do the housework.
 - The housework is supposed to be done by Alia.

٤- الحال في الجملة يأتي قبل P.P في المجهول

- The police searched this bag *thoroughly*.
The bag was *thoroughly* searched by the police.

٥- الافعال الآتية (make/ see/ hear/ watch) يليها مفعول ثم مصدر وعند التحويل الى مبنى.

للمجهول نستخدم (to) قبل المصدر اما الفعل (let) فيتحول الى (allowed to)

- The thief made the man empty his pockets.
- * The man was made to empty his pockets.
- I let my son go to the cinema.
- My son was allowed to go to the cinema.

٧- إذا كانت الجملة تحتوى على مفعولين يمكن ان نبدأ بالمفعول الاول او الثانى. وإذا بدأنا بالمفعول الثانى نستخدم حرف الجر (to/ for) قبل المفعول الاول.

- 1] He gave me a nice camera.
 - * I'was given a nice camera.
 - * A nice camera was given to me.
- 2] I bought my wife some flowers.
 - * My wife was bought some flowers.
 - * Some flowers were bought for my wife.

مع الافعال الاتية (to) نستخدم

Bring	يظهر/يعرض	show	يمرر/ يناول	pass	يقرض	lend	يحضر
Give	يخبر	tell	يدفع	pay	يعرض	offer	يعطى
Hand	يكت	weite	يبيع	sell	يدين	owe	يعطى/يناول

مع الافعال الاتية (for) نستخدم

book	يترك	leave	يجد	find	ينادى/يتصل	call	يحجز
build	يصنع	make	يحصل على	get	يقطع	cut	يبني
buy	يوفر	save	يحافظ على	keep	يدهب/ليحضر	fetch	يشترى

٧- اذا كان المفعول به جملة... يتم بناء الجملة بشكل طبيعي للمجهول.

* We know what he means.

What he means is known.

٨- يمكن ان نستخدم الفعل (get) بدلا من (verb to be) عند التحويل الى مبنى للمجهول خاصة مع التصريف الثالث من الافعال الاتية:

(catch / arrest / damage / destroy / kill / marry / burn / beat)

-The police arrested the bank robbers.

The bank robbers oot arrested. = the bank robbers were arrested

٩- اذا كان الفاعل غير معروف مثل:

by+ people, someone, somebody فلا نستخدم الفاعل +

Active: Someone has broken the bottles.

* Passive; The bottles have been broken, (~~by someone~~)

١٠- يتم تحويل زمن المضارع التام المستمر (have- has) been + verb- ing بنفس طريقة تحويل زمن المضارع التام (have- has)been + P.P

- The boys have been doing the homework for two hours.

* The homework has been done for two hours.

١١- يتم تحويل زمن المضارع التام المستمر (have- has) been + verb- ing بنفس طريقة تحويل زمن المضارع التام (have- has) been+ P.P

- The boys have been doing the homework for two hours.

* The homework has been done for two hour.

١٢- اذا كانت الجملة امر: Open the door

let + be + p.p + المفعول

Let the door be-opened.

* should + be + p.p + المفعول

The door should be opened.

Where did you park the car?

١٣ - اذا كانت الجملة سؤال:

Where was the car parked?

P.P حسب زمن الجملة تم المفعول ثم v. to be نضع ادالة الاستفهام ثم

وفقا للشكل التالي

P.P...? + المفعول به + حسب زمن الجملة v.to be + اداة الاستفهام

١٤ - اذا كان الفاعل والمفعول واحد مع الفعل (let) نستخدم ضميرا منعكسا ثم (be) ثم (P.P)

- He doesn't let others laugh at him.
- He doesn't let himself be laughed at.

١٥ - فى حالة الافعال المتبوعة بـ (to+ inf) نستخدم (to be+ P.P) عند التحويل الى مبنى للمجهول.

- I want you to tell me the truth.
- I want to be told the truth

١٦ - فى حالة الافعال المتبوعة بـ (G) نستخدم (being+ P.P) فى المجهول

- I hate people telling me lies.
- I hate being told lies.

ملاحظة هامة Passive & causative

* نستخدم هذه الصيغة لبيان فعل الشيء للشخص من قبل شخص آخر كخدمة :

He washed his clothes yesterday. (Active)

His clothes were washed yesterday. (Passive)

He had his clothes washed yesterday. (Causative)

الجملة الاولى : تعنى انه غسل الملابس بنفسه.

الجملة الثانية : تعنى ان الملابس تم غسلها (ربما هو قام بذلك او شخص آخر)

Exercises on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A ticket must.....before entering a public place in this city.
a) book b) booked c) be booked d) booking
2. In Japan, buildings.....to withstand earthquakes.
a) Have constructed b) are constructing
c) are constructed d) had constructed
3. All the lights.....off before my going to bed.
a) turned b) were turning c) were turned d) turned
4. All the questions.....on the paper.
a) will answer b) must answer
c) answering d) must be answered
5. When he returned home, he found that all his money.....stolen
a) is b) had c) had been d) has been
6. The budget ميزانية for the project.....tomorrow.
a) will discuss b) may discuss
c) will be discussed d) has been done
7. I'm going home now because all the work.....already.
a) are done b) will be done c) had been doing d) has been done
8. Don't let yourself.....
a) cheated b) cheating c) be cheated d) to cheat
9. A radio transmitter.....in the spy's cupboard.
a) hide b) had hidden c) was hidden d) hidden
10. I'm going to a party tonight. I.....by my friend.
a) invite b) was invited c) will invite d) have invited
11. This secret must not.....to anyone.
a) be revealed b) revel c) being revealed d) have been revealed
12. It.....that there is no water on the moon.
a) believe b) believes c) is believed d) believed

a) was shown b) is shown c) has shown d) has been shown

a) is planned **b) will be planned**

15. It.....that the earth is not exactly round.

student's Book- Workbook – Longman exercises- Previous Exams:

a) was taught b) is taught c) is being taught d) taught

a) thinking b) was thinking c) thought d) was thought

a) be based b) base c) are based d) have based.

a) is written b) was written c) has written d) has been written

a) are watched

21. English and Arabic.....In most tourist officers.

22. One of the classroom windows.....

23. Petra.....By the Roman in 106 A.b.

c) captured

a) have been designed **b) was designed**

25. The Cairo Metro.....to carry about 10 million passengers every day.

a) used b) has used c) is used d) was used

26. Many of Agatha Christie's stories..... into films.

- a) have been made b) had made
c) were making d) made

27. Breakfast..... every day from 7 am to 10 am.

- a) is serving b) serves c) was served d) is served

28. A famous tennis player is believed.....after a city centre road accident.

- a) to hurt b) to be hurt c) to have hurt d) hurt

29. It is believed that languages.....to younger children at schools

- a) taught b) are teaching c) is taught d) are taught

30.It.....that archaeologists have found a new pyramid at aqqara

- a) reports b) reported
c) was reporting d) has been reported.

31. The Postman, by YehiaHaqqi,.....first prize in 1968.

- a) awarded b) was awarded
c) was awarding d) is being awarded

32. YehiaHaqqi is.....as one of Egypt's great literary figures.

- a) remembering b) being remembered
c) remembers d) remembered

33. We cannot.....here because of the flood.

- a) excavating b) be excavated c) to excavate d) excavate

34. Mrs. Smith.....of committing the murder, but I know that she is innocent.

- a) is suspected b) has suspected
c) is suspecting d) suspected

35. The ring.....while she was washing the dishes.

- a) was lost b) lost c) is lost d) was losing

36. Before the rabbit.....it had eaten half the carrots in the garden.

- a) was caught b) had caught
c) was being caught d) caught

37. When we were young, every day Sally.....by mother to serve the tea.

- a) is chosen b) was chosen c) chose d) choose

37. When we were young, every day Sally.....by mother to serve the tea.

- a) is chosen b) was chosen c) chose d) choose**

38. This nice story.....:.... by Taha Hussein.

- a) is written b) writes c) wrote d) was written**

39. Vehia Haqqi.....of as the father of the Egyptian modern short story.

- a) still is thinking b) still is thought**
c) is still thought d) is still thinking

40. Naguib Mahfouz's books.....into many languages.

- a) have translated b) had translated**
c) were translating d) have been translated

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly

- 1. The houses were designing to keep people cool and comfortable.**
- 2. Unemployment must dealt with by the government.**
- 3. It is believing that the Great Pyramid of Giza was built as a tomb for the Pharaoh Khufu**
- 4. Did you hear that Mr. Hesham promoted to a management position at work?**
- 5. This government could be change by this scandal.**
- 6. The house has decorated recently.**
- 7. Humans think to have originated in the east of Africa.**
- 8. Experts are believed that people have lived in Dakhla for thousands of years.**
- 9. The grass haven't been cut yet.**
- 10. It is say that the building of the Temple of Edf u was started in 237 BC.**
- 11. The company is thought to making a big profit.**
- 12. Before the government was built roads across the desert, hardly any Visitors came to Dakhla.**
- 13. The new hospital was open by the Minister of Health in 2008.**
- 14. Architects are designed the houses to keep people cool and comfortable.**
- 15. He is known to has several foreign bank accounts.**
- 16. This omelette was made by eggs and cheese.**

17. Glassware products were produced in this city since the time of the Romans.
18. The British railways thought to be the best in the world but are now almost the worst.
19. He considers to be one of the most intelligent pupils.
20. Ali went to the mechanic's to be his car repaired.
21. Profits of the company were analyzed every year.
22. Hamlet is a classic that was wrote by William Shakespeare.
23. The famous glass pyramid at the Louvre Museum is designed by I.M. pie in the 1980s.
24. Half of the pets had gone missirig before I was give the duty to take care of them.
25. Peace knows to be constructive.
26. He sends to prison for his crime.

Language Functions

Asking for and Giving Advice:

Asking for and Advice : طلب واعطاء النصيحة

Asking for Advice	Giving Advice
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Can you give me some advice? * Can I ask your advice about something? * What do you think I should / ought to do about...? * What do you think about (V. + ing)? * What would you do about? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * I think you should..... * Why don't you...? * If I were you, I'd..... * What about.....? * I think it'd be a good idea to ... * You could ... * The best thing you could do would.be to ...

Responding to Advice الرد على النصيحة

Accepting	Refusing
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * yes, you're right * yes, I know I should/ I shouldn't * That's a great idea. * Why didn't I think of that 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * I don't want to do that. * I don't really think so. * Absolutely. / Certainly not. * Maybe. * I'm not sure about that I'll think about it.

Exercises on Language Functions

Respond to each of the following situations:

- 1- A friend asks your advice about keeping fit. Advise Kim.
- 2- You want some advice from a friend how you can eat more healthily.
- 3- A friend wants to meet new people, but he or she is very shy. Make a recommendation.
- 4- Ask your teacher for advice about how to do well in the next English test.
- 5- Your friend needs your advice where to spend the mid-year vacation. Advise him.
- 6- yourmother thinks you should log onto the internet less. You accept her advice.

Paragraph

Terrorism

Terrorism has become an international problem. The word terrorism comes from the word "terror" which means a violent action فعل عنيف causes great fear. The terrorist attacks in many parts of the world caused thousands of deaths. Terrorism is against religion. Terrorism makes people feel unsafe.

Governments must co-operate if they want to fight international Terrorism الارهاب الدولي

The President has always believed that Terrorism will continue unless the ur Palestinian problem is solved. He called for an international conference on terrorism. Terrorists must be severely punished يعاقبون بشدة. Ordinary people must take part in the fight against Terrorism

2009 - 2008 ع.

Translation

1) Egypt aims at attracting Arab and foreign capital for investment. So, the Egyptian government should encourage setting up new factories for modern industries. It should also develop the existing ones

* تهدف مصر الى جذب رأس المال العربي والاجنبي للاستثمار فيه . لذا فانه يجب على الحكومة المصرية ان تشجع بناء مصانع جديدة للصناعات الحديثة وعليها ايضا ان تسعى الى تطوير المصانع الموجودة (القائمة)
١ - نحن نعيش الان عصر الاتصالات الذي جعل العالم عالما مفتوحا.

❖ We live in the age of communications which has made the world an open one world.

٢ - تقوم المرأة المصرية اليوم بدور فعال في كل نواحي الحياة وتسهم بقدر كبير في تقدم بلادها.

The Egyptian woman plays (an important a vital) role in all walks of life and contributes greatly to her country's progress.

* capital (n)	راس المال	* age of communications	عصر الاتصالات
* investment (n)	استثمار	*existing (adj)	موجودة - قائمة

2) Sports and games play an important role in building up the body and the character. Through sports, young people find an outlet to their energies so, the government spares no effort to encourage sports.

* تلعب الرياضة دورا هاما في بناء الجسم والشخصية فمن خلال الرياضة يجد الشباب منفذاً لطاقتهم ولذلك فان الحكومة لا تدخر جهداً في تشجيع الرياضة.

١ - يجب على الوالدين توجيه ورعاية ابنائهم ليواصلوا رحلة الحياة بأمان.

* Parents should care for their children and guide them to continue the journey of life safely .

١ - تهتم الحكومة اهتماما كبيرا بالمرأة وتوفر لها التعليم والوظائف والرعاية الصحية والاجتماعية.

* The government pays great attention to women and provide them with education jobs and health and social welfare.

* an outlet(n) منفذ - مخرج	* social welfare رعاية اجتماعية
* character (n) شخصية	* spare (v) يدخر - يوفر

3) Many studies have shown that it is better to wear your seat belt when you driving a car. Seat belts greatly reduce the risk of death or injury in accidents. This fact is widely recognized and many governments have passed laws requiring seat belt use.

* أظهرت كثير من الدراسات انه من الافضل ان ترتدى حزام الامان عند قيادة سيارتك ، فحزام الامان يقلل كثيرا من خطر الموت او الاصابة عند الحوادث. ولقد ادركت العديد من الحكومات اهمية هذه الحقيقة واصدرت قوانين بضرورة استخدام حزام الامان.
١ - يسعى العالم جاهدا لاكتشاف علاج انفلونزا الخنازير.

* The world tries hard to find out a cure for swine flu (or) pig flu

٢ - يجب علينا ان نزيد من صادراتنا وان نحد من وارداتنا كوسيلة لحل مشكلاتنا الاقتصادية.

* We must increase our exports and decrease our imports so as to solve our economic problems.

* seat belt (n)	حزام الامان	cure (n) (v)	علاج- يعالج
* risk(n)	خطر	pass laws	تصدر قوانين
* Widely (adv)	على نحو واسع	Swine/pig flu	انفلونزا الخنازير

Test 5

A-Language Functions

1] Respond to each of the following situations:

- 1] A friend asks for your advice about revising his lessons.
- 2] You want to ask your father's advice about the best place to buy your clothes.
- 3] Your mother advised you not to waste your time watching TV all the time.
- 4] Ask your teacher for advice about how to keep fit.

7. It.....that the thief has escaped abroad.
a) is feared b) feared c) has feared d) fears
8. My uncle came back home as our flat.....cleaned and tidied.
a) is b) was c) was being d) had been
9. Only ten people,.....two children, survived the plane crash.
a) including b) enclosing c) consisting d) containing
10. The conference.....at a famous hotel at the moment.
a) will be held b) is being held c) will hold d) is holding
11. The man was set free because he was found.....
a) innocent b) guilty c) criminal d) shy
12. The Mousetrap is Agatha Christie's longest-.....play.
a) run b) ran c) runner d) running
13. The police are looking for the thief who broke into the bank. The main..... is a man in mid-thirties.
a) agent b) pioneer c) suspect d) publisher
14. The radio.....by Marconi.
a) was invented b) were invented c) invented d) invent
15. The victim of the accident can't remember the details. The doctor thinks he may
a) headache b) phobia c) amnesia d) injury
16. The.....of the United Nations is in New York.
a) headmasters b) headdresses c) headgears d) headquarters

4- Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write hem correctly:

- 1} Before I enter any police building, I have to show my credit card.
- 2} King Lear wrote by William Shakespeare.
- 3} After awarding the Noble Prize, Zewail became one of the most famous scientists in the world.
- 4} Nothing was knowing about America until Columbus's discovery.
- 5} A mouse trap is used to feed mice.
- 6} Things Agatha learnt in her early life, is used later in her writings.

C- Reading

5- Read the following passage and then answer the questions:

Video and television are responsible for the declining interest In among the young. While they may be harmless in themselves, they do nothing to build up reading skills. If some of the hours children spend watching television were devoted to reading, the population would be better educated.

Watching a story is a totally passive pass time. Someone else has made decisions about everything in the story. Reading a story is an active partnership between writer and reader. Ideas are sketched and the mind of the reader creates the, rest.

watching something is easier.

The problem is that many children read very slowly. They decode a two in a class and about the same again for homework. It is hardly surprising that such children then declare that they find reading boring and prefer to watch television. Their difficulty is not reading the words; it is interpreting them . They need to be able to read fast enough to feed the mind's hunger for a story. That means practice. Only by reading daily, will a child become a strong and independent reader. Parents need to be convinced of the importance of preventing their children from wasting their hours on interviewing. Without the television the child is likely to turn to books for entertainment.

- 1. What is the writer s main objection on video and TV?**
- 2. Why is watching a story easier than reading it?**
- 3. How can children be good readers?**

3. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to.....

- 6- Read the following passage and then answer the questions:**

The other man was wearing a suit and holding a plastic petrol can. He stopped people and told them his car had run out of petrol and he had forgotten his wallet. He asked them to lend him some money for petrol. Most people happily gave him money. Some gave him coins, but most gave him notes. I watched him for ten minutes. In that time he collected a lot of money. He put it in his pocket, but he did not go to the petrol station. It became clear to me that both men were beggars. The one in the dirty clothes needed money more than the one in the suit. But the one in the suit was much more successful. Isn't that strange?

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why was the writer standing outside the station?
2. Which man collected the most money?
3. What does the pronoun "it" in bold refer to?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "Most people ignored him." Means people.....
a) shouted at him b) refused to give him any money
c) walked past without looking at him d) moved quickly
2. People.....the second man's story.
a) didn't believe b) believed c) doubted d) knew

The Reader (The Prisoner of Zenda)

1) A- Answer the following questions:

1. What kind of people live in the old part of the city of Strelsau?
2. Why is Sapt so anxious about Rassendyll's decision to ride alone through the old town?
3. Rassendyll (The King) showed some courage during the coronation procession. Show how.
4. Why does Duke Michael's face turn white when he sees "the King" (Rassendyll)?

B) Read the following quotation then answer the questions:

{Tell your soldiers to ride ahead of me }

- 1- Who says this? To whom?
- 2- What is the speaker going to do?
- 3- What is the people's attitude towards what he is going to do?

C- Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct:

- 1- Rassendyll (The King) raises his eye to a window and sees Johann's mother looking at him.
- 2- Duke Michael notices that the King changed and began to take life seriously.

Writing

E-mail writing:

write a reply to the following e-mail.

Dear Nour,

How are you? I hope you are fine. I have a problem and in a bad need of your advice. As you know I have recently started learning Arabic. I face some problems such as pronunciation and spelling. I also find the Arabic grammar very difficult. What do you think I should do?

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours, David

9- A- Translate into Arabic:

There should be a comprehensive plan for the educational reform. It is a national mission not only limited to the Ministry of Education. All sectors, thinkers and political parties should work together to put this reform into effect.

B- Translate into English:

١- لقد أثبتت ثورة ٢٥ يناير ان الشباب المصري يستطيع بالوحدة والتعاون صنع المعجزات.

٢- الثقافة والادب هما مرآة المجتمع فكلما تحضر المجتمع كلما تطور ثقافته وادبه.

Unit (6)

the importance of trees

Listening Text

Presenter:	In today's Natural World, professor Jeremy Beech is going answer listeners questions about trees. Welcome to the programme.
Prof. Beech:	Hello.
Presenter:	Can we have our first question, please?
Female caller:	Hello, I'd like to ask the professor about the tallest tree in the world. Where is it and how tall is it?
Presenter:	The tallest tree in. the world is a Slant Sequoia and it's in California. It's 83.8 metres tall. Scientists say it is between 2.300 and 2.700 years old.
Boy caller:	Hello. I know a tree's leaves help it to take in light from the sun. but I'd like to ask what the bark of a tree does.
Prof. Beech:	Well, the park is like our skin- it protects the living part of the tree and the tubes which carry water from a tree's roots to its leaves. If the bark is badly damaged, the tree dies. Animals, such as goats, love eating bark; so it's especially important to keep animals away from young trees.
Presenter:	Thank you. What's the next question?
Male caller:	Hi, I'd like to ask: how is it possible to calculate the age of a tree by counting its rings, without cutting the tree down?
Presenter:	Good question, perhaps you could start by explaining what the rings are that this caller is referring to.

Presenter:	Well, most trees grow bigger every year. Just under the bark there's a circle of soft cells which hardens every spring or sumi summer. This forms a ring of new wood each year. This means we can calculate the age of the tree by counting the rings.
Presenter :	You can see the rings if you cut the tree down. But how do you do this without killing the tree?
Prof. Beech:	We can drill into the tree to make a deep, narrow hole. We then extract a very thin piece of wood which dtfes no damage to the tree. And are the rings the same width every year?
Prof. Dunn:	No, they aren't, the width depends on the climate and the amount of rain . If there's a lot of rain during the year, the rings are quite wide.
Prof. Beech:	If it's a dry year, the rings are narrower. In this way, we can find out what the weather was like hundreds of years ago when the tree was younger.

a) Answer the following:-

1- What is the function of the bark of the tree?

.....

2- How can we calculate the age of a tree?

.....

3- Are ail the rings the same width? Why?

.....

b) Choose the correct answer: -

1- This passage is a part of a.....

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| e)T.V programme | b) radio programme |
| c) Press conference | d) presentation |

2- The tallest tree in the world is in.....

- | | | | |
|--------|-----------|------------|-----------|
| e)Asia | b) Africa | c) America | d) Europe |
|--------|-----------|------------|-----------|

Vocabulary. on Listening

Age	عمر / سن / عمر	Grow (v)	يزرع
Amount (n)		harden (v)	يقوى / يحمّد
Bark (n)	كمية	hard (adj)	جامد / صلب
calculate (v)	الحاء / القشرة الخارجية	Hole (n)	فتحة / ثقب
Caller (n)	بحسب	Leaves (n)	اوراق
Cells (n)	الشخص المتصل	move on (v)	ينتقل الى
climate (n)	خلايا	Narrow (adj)	ضيق
common (adj)	المناخ	natural (adj)	طبيعي
Count (v)	شائع / مشترك	Park (n)	حديقة عامة
Cut down (v)	بعد / بحسب	protect (v)	نحمى
Damage (v)	يقطع	refer to (v)	يشير الى
Drill (v)	يتلف / يؤذى / تلف	rings (n)	حلقات
Especially (adv)	يحفر	Roots (n)	جذور
Explain (v)	يشرح	sequoia (n)	شجر فى كاليفورنيا
Explanation (n)	شرح	shelter (n)	ملجأ / مأوى
Extract (v)	يستخلص / ينزع	skin (n)	جلد
Form (v) (n)	يشكل / يكون / شكل	take in (v)	يتمص
Fruit (n)	فاكهة / ثمرة	tubes (n)	انابيب
Giant (n) (adj)	عملاق	weather (n)	طقس

Reading

If you ask people why we need trees, most of them will answer. "We need wood from trees for building houses,". "We get fruit and nuts from trees." "We make paper out of wood from trees." "We can use wood as a fuel for cooking and heating." Recently, people have added a more serious reason 'to this list. "Trees help the earth to breathe" or "They protect us from global warming.

It has been said that more than 5.000 things in everyday use are made from trees. Here are a few of them: furniture, sports equipment, pencils, magazines and newspapers, cardboard boxes, musical instruments and believe it or not some kinds of toothpaste.

In addition to these uses, trees also give us valuable chemicals. Turpentine which is used as paint remover is made from the sap of trees. Sap can also be used to make rubber. If wood is heated, chemicals are produced which can be used to make medicines and some kinds of plastic. Wood products can also be turned into paper, cardboard and material from which clothes can be made. You may be surprised to hear that wood product, are also used in some types of ice cream and other foods.

So, the next time you are reading a newspaper, eating an ice cream, playing the piano or cleaning your teeth, just stop and think; how would you manage to do these things if there were no trees?

a) Answer the following:-

- 1- Mention four usages of the wood
- 2-How can we use the wood in medicine?
- 3-Find a word in the passage that means "precious"

b) Choose the correct answer: -

- 1- According to the passage, cutting treesthe environment
c) improves b) cleans c) harms d) helps
- 2- 5000 things in our.....use are made from wood
a) diary b) daily. c) annual d) weekly

vocabulary on Reding :

add (v)	يضيف	management (n)	ادارة/ تدبير
addition (n)	اضافة	materials (n)	مواد
breathe (v)	يتنفس	nuts(n)	بندق
breath (n)	نفس	paint (n) (v)	دهان/ طلاء/ يدهن
cardboard (n)	ورق مقوى/ كرتوني	products (n)	منتجات
equipment (n)	معدات/ تجهيزات	remover (n)	مزيل
equip (with) (v)	يجهز/ يمد بـ	remove (v)	يزيل

fuel (n) (v)	وقود/يزود بالوقود	rubber (n)	مطاط
furniture (n)	اثاث	rubbery (adj)	مطاطي
global warming (n)	الاحتباس الحراري	sap (n)	سائل داخل الشجرة
heat (v) (n)	يسخن/ حرارة	toothpaste'(n)	معجون اسنان
instruments (n)	الات/ ادوات	turpentine (n)	زيت التربينتين
instrumental (adj)	ذو دور فعال	valuable (adj)	قيم
manage (v)	يدير/ يفلح	value (n)	قيمة

Critical Thinking & Communication

dig (v)	يحفر	point (n)	نقطة
environment (n)	البيئة	press (v)	يضغط
fertilizer (n)	سماد	recharge (v)	يعيد شحن
fill (v)	يملأ	sandstorm (n)	عاصفة رملية
hammer (n)	مطرقة	soil(n)	تربة
instructions (n)	تعليمات	stick (n)	عصا
order (n) (v)	امر- يرتب	tie (v)	يربط

Workbook

branch (n)	فرع	mix (v)_	يخلط
cupboard (n)	دولاب/ خزانة	pick (v)	يقطف
deep (adj)	عميق	pour (v)	يسكب
depth (n)	عمق	seeds (n)_	بذور
deepen (v)	يعمق	sharp (adj)	حاد
deeply (adv)	بعمق	sharpen (v)	يجعله حادا
destroy (v)	يدمر	short (adj)	قصيرا
destruction (n)	دمار	shorten (v)	يقصر
flat (adj)	مستوى/ مسطح	strong (adj)	قوى
freeze (v)	يتجمد	strengthen (v)	يقوى
global (adj)	عالمي- كوني	weak (adj)	ضعيف
gloves (n)	قفاز- جواناتي	weaken (v)	يضعف
high (adj)	عال/ مرتفع	weakness (n)	الضعف
height (n)	ارتفاع	wide (adj)	واسع/ عريض
heighten (v)	يرفع- يجعله عاليا	width (n)	اتساع/ عرض
long (adj)	طويل	widen (v)	يوسع
Leanath (n)	طول	extra	اضافي/زائد

Definitios:

bark	اللحاء/ القشرة الخارجية	the material that forms the surface of the wood of a tree.
calculate	يحسب	to find out something or measure something by using numbers.
cardboard	ورق مقوى/كرتونى	very stiff thick paper, used especially for making boxes.
extract	يستخلص/ ينزع	to remove something.
harden	يصبح صلبا/ يجمد/ يقوى	to become firm or stiff.
instrument	الآلة- اداة موسيقية	something such as a piano or violin uses for producing musical sounds.
products	منتجات	things that are made or grown to be sold.
ring	حلقة	an object in the shape of a circle.
rubber	مطاط	a substance used for making tyres, boots, etc.
sap	سائل داخل شجرة	the liquid that carries food through plans and trees.
Toothpaste	معجون اسنان	substance used for cleaning your teeth.
tube	انبوبة	a pipe that liquids or gases go through.
turpentine	سائل التربينتينة(مزيل الطلاء)	a strong-smelling liquid used for removing paint.
width	العرض	the distance from one side of something to the other.

Phrases, Expressions & Idioms

a set of instructions	مجموعة تعليمات	ive instructions	يعطى تعليمات
along the side of the street	على جانب الشارع	grow on trees	ينمو على الاشجار
break the rules	يخالف القوانين	hide from enemies	يحتبىء من الاعداء
calculate the age of a tree	يحسب عمر الشجرة	in general	بصفة عامة

carry from..... to	ينقل من..الى	make a list	يعد قائمة
Carry out instructions	ينفذ معلومات	make predictions	يتنبأ
do a favour	يقدم خدمة او معروف	put down roots	يستقر في مكان معين
do damage to	يسبب ضررا لـ	put out fire	يطفىء النيران
fall over in the wind	يسقط اثناء هبوب الرياح	Set rules	يضع القوانين
Get better at	يتحسن في	use wood as a fuel	يستخدم الخشب كوقود

Notes on Vocabulary

(1) **produce / product / producer / productive /production**

produce (v) **ينتج**

» We are now *producing* the same quantity of goods with far fewer workers.

» Local people come to the market each day to sell their produce.

كأسم بمعنى انتاج زراعي فقط produce لاحظ استخدام

product (n)

منتج (سلعة)

»The system we have now is the product of years of research.

producer (n)

منتج (شخص)

» The interests of producers and consumers may be in conflict.

Productive (adj)

منتج (غزير الانتاج)

»We live in a productive society. We all work hard to satisfy our needs.

Production (n)

الانتاج

»We should use modern technology in all production fields.

(2) **manage to succeed in**

manage to + inf

ينجح في - يفلح في

»The thief managed to escape from the policy by diving into the river.

succeed in + v-ing

»The thief succeeded in escaping from the policy by diving into the river.

(3)

use to

use for

use as

use + object * to + inf

يستخدم لكي

» We use methane gas to heat and generate power.

use * object + for + v-ing

يستخدم من أجل

» We use methane gas for heating and generating power.

use * object + as

يستخدم كـ

» They used the recession الركود as an excuse to get rid of workers

» Turpentine is used as a paint remover.

(4)

connected to

connected with

contact

connected to

متصل بـ (شيء يتصل مباشرة بشيء آخر)

» The printer is connected to the computer.

connected with

مرتبط - له علاقة بـ

» Doctors believe that the increase in asthma الربو is connected with pollution level.

Contact

يتصل بـ

» Is there a phone number where I can contact you?

(5)

القاعدة الأساسية انه بعد الافعال تأتي احوال (الظرف) ولكن بعض الافعال يليها صفات مثل

Look - taste - smell - feel - sound - become - get - grow - v.
to be – seem... etc

» The food tastes great.

» It is cold today

(6)

own up

admit

He owned up = He admitted that he has done something wrong.

own up to + someone

يعترف لشخص ما

» He cut down the tree and owned up to his father.

own up to + v-ing

يعترف بأنه فعل شيئاً ما

» he Owned up to breaking the window.

(7)

quit

quite

quiet

quiet (adj/n)

هادى ء / الهدوء

»I'd like to live in a quiet place.

quite (adv)

(الى حد ما) يأتى بعدها اما صفة او ظرف او صفة + اسم

»If there is a lot of rain during the year, the rings in a tree are quite wide.

quit (v)

يترك

» Tamer quit his job in Egypt and travelled to Saudi Arabia.

(8)

the same . . as

the same + noun

similar to

the same as

مماثل / مطابق تماما (تشابه كلى)

» Rassendyll looks the same as the king of Ruritania.

the same + noun

مشابه

» Are the ring in a-tHf have the same width every year.

similar to

مشابه / متشابه (تشابه جزئى)

»My car and yours are similar. Yours is a little new.

(9)

Adjectoves "صفات"

verbs "افعال"

Soft

ناعم

Soften

long طويل

lengthen

less

قليل

lessen

wide عريض

widen

short

قصير

shorten

sharp حاد

sharpen

hard

صلب

harden

weak ضعيف

weaken

strong

ناعم

strengthen

high على

heighten

Deep

عميق

deepen

(اجزاء الشجرة Parts of tree)

(10) Sap bark roots leaves trunk fruit branch

Sap

عصارة النبات

» the liquid that carries food (like blood) through plants and trees.

bark

اللحاء "القشرة الخارجية للشجرة"

» The hard outside part of a tree القشرة الخارجية للشجرة. The outer layer جذع الشجرة الطبقة الخارجية of the trunk of the tree

Roots

الجذور

The parts of trees that grow under the ground and find water. It is the underground part that hold the tree securely بشكل آمن in the ground. They spread ينتشر underground. Their functions are:

a- They transport ينقل water and mineral salts املاح معدنية from the soil to all the parts of the tree.

b- The hold يدعم the tree to the ground. يمسك

Leaves

اوراق الشجرة

» The flat green parts at the ends of the branches فروع of a tree / the food factory of the tree. They are the parts that die every year and fall from some trees in autumn.

Trunk

جذع الشجرة

» Is the strongest part of the tree that supports branches. It is the thick central wooden stem جذع of a tree.

Fruit

ثمرة فاكهة

» It grows on a plant or tree and has seeds بذور inside.

Branch

فرع الشجرة

» A part of a tree that grows out from the trunk.

» It protects the tubes that carry water and mineral salts املاح معدنية from the roots to the leaves. Animals should be kept away from young trees so as not to eat the bark and cause its death.

seeds

البذور

» Seed are found inside the fruit.

Kinds of Forests انواع الغابات

forest	tropical rain forests	rain forests	deciduous
forests	coniferous forests	evergreens	hydroponics

Forest الغابة

» A large area of land, which is mainly covered with trees.

Tropical rain forests الغابات الاستوائية

» Temperature and rainfall are high. Some are tall trees, below them are smaller ones and below those a thick tangle of bushes they are 7% of the Earth's surface.

Rain forests

» Forests are areas of land covered with trees. Twenty percent of the Earth's surface is covered with trees either natural or planted by man.

Deciduous forests غابات نفضية

» They lose their leaves in winter. Climate is temperate معتدل

Coniferous forests غابات صنوبرية

» They are in northern climates and mountain slopes منحدر . The are evergreen دائمة الخضرة Branches slope downwards to let snow slide off winter. They are in Russia and are eleven million square Km.

Evergreens الاشجار دائمة الخضرة

» Are the trees which don't lose their leaves in autumn.

Hydroponics زراعة النباتات في ماء (بدون تربة زراعية)

» By hydroponics we can grow plants without soil. It is an old idea as Ancient Egyptians grew plants in water. There were the hanging gardens حدائق معلقة of Babylon and floating gardens in Mexico.

Confusing words for choices and find the mistakes

Weather	الطقس (فترة قصيرة)	Atmosphere climate	الغلاف الجوى المناخ (فترة طويلة)
Count	يعد	Calculate	يحسب (باستخدام آلة)
Bark	١- القشرة الخارجية التي تحمى الشجرة ٢- نباح الكلب- ينبج	Park	حديقة عامة- يركن سيارة- موقف سيارة
Amount	كمية- مقدار	Account	حسب
Hole	حفرة - ثقب	Hall	صالة
Natural	طبيعي (من الطبيعة)	Normal	طبيعي (ليس به شذوذ)
Skin	جلد - بشرة	Leather	جلد حيوان مدبوغ
Breathe	يتنفس	Breeze Freeze	النسيم يتجمد
warming	دفع	warning	تحذير
Rubber	مطاط	Supper	العشاء المتأخر
Sap	سائل داخل الشجرة (نسغ)	Soup Sip	شوربة رشفة
Pour	يصب (يسكب)	Poor	فقير
Toothpaste	معجون أسنان	Toothache	ألم بالأسنان
Root	جذر شجرة	Route	طريق- مسار - مسلك
Cardboard box	صندوق من الكرتون	Paint remover	مزيل الطلاء
Global warming	الاحتباس الحرارى	Rubber gloves	قفاز من المطاط
Musical instrument	آلة موسيقية	Sports equipment	أجهزة رياضية

Opposites :

advantages	مميزات	Disadvantages	عيوب
breathe in	يستنشق	Breathe out	يزفر (يخرج النفس)
deep	عميق	Shallow	ضحل
dry	جاف	Wet	مبلل
freeze	يتجمد	Melt	يذوب
soft	ناعم - أملس	Hard	صلب
valuable	قيم	Valueless	بلاقيمة

Verbs & prepositions:

To			
Refer to	يشير إلى	Tie ... to	يربط ... بـ
Manage to	ينجح فى	Belong to	ينتمى إلى
From			
Keep...away from	يبعد ... عن	Protect from	يحمى من
Come from	يأتى من		
Into			
Drill into	يحفّر - يثقب	Turn into	يتحول إلى
On			
Depend on	يعتمد على	Go on	يستمر فى
Out			
Give out	يخرج - يطلق	Find out	يكتشف
Make.. out of	يصنع من		
For			
Good for	مفيد لـ	Important for	هام لـ
Other prepositions			
Take in	يمتص - يستوعب - يخدع	Take off	يقلع - يخلع

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- He'll only hold a driving licence when he reaches the..... of 18.
a. aged b. year c. old d. age
- They.....that the project would cost 4 million pounds.
a. count b. suppose c. calculate d. figure
- My friend.....me a favour when he lent me the money I needed.
a. did b. made c. played d. brought
- What are the effects of global warming on our.....all over the year.
a. climate b. weather c. conditions d. affairs
- At least 60 people were injured, but we're still.....
a. sleeping b. crying c. calculating d. counting

6. A fire had caused serious to their flat.
a. demolish b. destroy c.damage d.harmful
7. I wasn't able to.....an apology from her.
a. take b. extract c.borrow d. give
8. Swimming is an excellent.....of exercise.
a. form b. sample c.type d.sort
9. It took us three hours to put the fire.....
a. in b. on c. down d.out
10. Workers dug a 30-foot.....in the ground.
a. hall b.hill c.hole d.hell
- 11.This company's products are organic as they use only....ingredients.
a. national b. natural c. nation d. nationality
12. This worm jacket will help to.....you against the cold.
a. protect b. collect c. connect d. prevent
13. She.....to the subject several times during her speech.
a. preferred b. refer c. referee d.referred
14. This washing powder will.....most stains **بقع**
a. improve b. move c. remove d.prove
15. They found.....for the night from the sun.
a. settler b. shelter c. chapter d.shifter
16. A tree's leaves help it to.....light from the sun.
a. take in b. in take c. take up d. take out
17. Unsettled.....will continue through the weekend.
a. condition b. atmosphere c. climate d. weather
- 18.We can no longer have confidence in the quality of the air we....
a. breath b. breathe c. take in d. take out
- 19.Sara studied hard and.....to get the highest mark.
a. applied b. succeeded c. managed d. enabled
- 20.The job gave her an opportunity to gain.....experience.
a. valueless b. value . c. unvalued d.valuble

21. The players were given strict not to leave the hotel.
 a. knowledge b. information c. instructions d. experience
22. He smashed the window with a
 a. ruler b. hammer c. pencil d. pen
23. We a hole and planted the tree.
 a. built b. dug c. erected d. designed
24. It takes a long time to the battery of this mobile as it needs repair.
 a. recharge b. buy c. sell d. mend
25. Maher could not have won the championship without Yusuf's help.
 Yusuf was in Maher's winning.
 a. instrument b. able c. instrumental d. ability
26. How is the Nile at Assuit?
 a. much b. wide c. long d. far
27. By not wasting our precious time, we can all live lives.
 a. product b. protect c. productive d. production
28. The molten lava cools, it becomes
 a. hard b. harden c. hardly d. hardness
29. We're teaching him how to a tie.
 a. control b. tie c. connect d. contact
30. A dirty is full of Germs.
 a. government b. family c. environment d. policy
31. The dry rocky is suitable for planting palm trees.
 a. roof b. soil c. floor d. sand
32. An earthquake the town, killing about 20,000 people.
 a. destroyed b. killed c. broke d. finished
33. The government stopped encouraging people to cut for fuel.
 a. road b. wood c. food d. fruit

(Student's Book - Workbook - Longman Exercises - Previous Exams)

34. The.....are the parts of trees that grow under the ground and find water.

- a.roots b. seeds c. roads d.routes

35. The hard outside part of the tree is called.....,.....

- a. park b.brake c. barking d. bark

36.....are the flat green parts at the ends of the branches of a tree.

- a. Loaves b.Leaves c. Chlorophyll d. Fruits

37. A.....grows on a plant or tree and has seeds inside.

- a. fruit b. truck c. bark d. branch

38. Every year, trees grow extra.....of new wood.

- a. circle b. bark c. cover d. ring

39. This road is narrow for all today's traffic, so they are going to.....

- a. widen b. wide c. width d. widening

40. Every year, the cells under the bark of a tree.....and become new wood.

- a. harden b. harder c. hardly d. hard

41. That old bridge is very weak. They will have to.....it soon.

- a. strong b.strengthen c. strength d.strongest

42. My new trousers too long, so my mother is going to.....them.

- a. short b. shortage c. shorts d. shorten

43. This knife doesn't cut very well. I need to.....it.

- a. sharp b. frighten c. sharpen d. shorten

44. That film is so popular that the queues to see it.....every day.

- a. long b. length c. lengthen d. heighten

45. Car's types and the bottoms of some shoes are made of.....

- a. rubber b. concrete c. wood d. steel

46. Coal, gas and oil are kinds of.....

- a fuel b. liquid c. food d. materials

47. People put.....on their brush to clean their teeth.

- a. tooth varnish b. nail vanish c. tooth brush d. toothpaste

48. Beds, chairs and cupboards are.....

- a. materials b. wood c. furniture d. fuel

49. When I paint, I need to use.....to remove the paint.

- a, rubber b. toothpaste c. sap d. turpentine

50. Rubber is made from the.....of a rubber tree.

- a. products b. rubber c. sap d. turpentine

51. Please put those books in the sturdy قوی.....boxes.

- a. tube b. transmitter c. instrument d. cardboard

52. If you leave bread out too long, it will.....

- a. freeze b. harden c. soften d. fasten

53. The water formed.....after the stone fell in. .

- a. rings b. barks c. tubes d. secrets

54. Nowadays, toothpaste comes in a.....that you squeeze from bottom.

- a. ring b. transmitter c. product d. tube

55. The.....on a tree protects it.

- a. ring b. tube c. bark d. branch

56. A violin is one type of.....that is made from wood.

- a. instrument b. product c. tube d. branch

57. There are many useful medical.....found in a hospital.

- a. headquarters b. saps c. cardboard d. instruments

58. The nurse put the blood in.....to send it to the laboratory.

- a. rings b. cardboard c. tubes d. products

59. Most creatures have some.....features.

- a. common b. comment c. complain d. insulated

60- The cover of the book is made of.....

- a. rubber b. glass c. wood d. cardboard

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

1. All living things need oxygen to release.

2. Blackboard is very stiff, thick paper used especially for making boxes.

3. Many things such as car tires and gloves are made from supper.

4. The branches are considered the food factory of the tree.

- 5.He succeeded to solve the problem in a short time.
- 6.I bought a brush and a tube of toothache to brush my teeth.
- 7.If the bark of the tree is badly repaired, the tree dies.
- 8.In Egypt we completely depend in the Nile to irrigate our fields.
- 9.She wears a pair of gloves to protect her hands from the heat.
- 10.Soup is the liquid that carries food through plants and trees.
- 11.The bark is the outer covering of a tree.
- 12.We couldn't paint the outside of the house because of the bad climate, today.
- 13.The destruction of the rainforests is contributing to global warming.
- 14.Be careful! The bread will hard if you don't cover it.
- 15.The old of a tree is calculated by counting the annul rings.
16. The route is the underground part of a tree.
17. The tree's pipes carry water and mineral salts from the roots to the leaves.
- 18.The violin and the lute are musical equipment.
19. The water is filtered to improve any impurities.
- 20.The wide of annual rings varies from year to year.
21. Tones of diamonds have been expected from the mine.
22. Trees help the environment by taking out carbon dioxide.
- 23.Turpentine is a strong-smelling liquid used for improving paint.
- 24.We shouldn't cut up young trees.
- 25.You should breeze or eat meat on the day that you buy it.

Translation

- 1) Cutting off trees in cities is an ill deed. Trees give us shade in summer and the green colour makes us feel at ease. Trees also purify the air and they give off oxygen by day. That's why we should do our best to spread the green colour over our country.
- 2) Arab countries must co-operate economically to achieve prosperity for besides, they have to encourage Arab scientists to make progress in the field of science.

Translate into English:

١. يجب أن نشجع الاستثمار والتصدير ونرشد الاستهلاك والاستيراد حتى يرتفع مستوى معيشة الأفراد .

٢. يمر العالم بأزمة اقتصادية تهدد استقرار الكثير من الدول خاصة الدول النامية.
٣. يستطيع المصريون تحويل الصحراء إلى أرض خضراء لإنتاج المزيد من الغذاء.
٤. إن قطع المزيد من الأشجار يعنى تسميم الإنسان نفسه وبينته.

Translation skill :

ill deed	عمل سيئ	Shade	الظل
At ease	يشعر بالراحة	Purify	ينقى
Spread	ينشر – ينتشر	Prosperity	الرخاء
Arab league	الجامعة العربية	Make progress	يحرز تقدماً
Consumption	الاستهلاك	Rationalize	نرشد
Crises	أزمة	Standard of living	مستوى معيشة
Developing countries	الدول النامية	Stability	استقرار
Environment	بيئة	Poisoning	تسميم

Language focus

Conditionals الجمل الشرطية

The Zero Conditional الحالة الصفرية

Form

If Present simple مضارع بسيط present simple مضارع بسيط

Present simple مضارع بسيط if present simple مضارع بسيط

Usage :

تستخدم هذه الحالة للتعبير عن المواقف التي تكون حقيقية دائماً – حقائق الكون – الفلك – الطب – الكيمياء وهكذا.

- If we heat ice, it melts.
- If a good student studies hard, he gets high marks.
- An applicant gets a good job if he has good qualifications.

ملاحظات :

أنا يمكن أن نستخدم (When) في الجمل السابقة.

إذا ظهر في جواب الشرط أحد هذه الكلمات (always- usually –often- rarely- seldom- never- sometimes) فإن هذه الحالة تكون Zero Conditional .

- If I need help, I usually ask my father.
- If she faces a problem, she never gives up.

الحالة الأولى First conditional

Form

مصدر + (will- can – may) الفاعل , (مضارع) If present

مصدر + (should) + الفاعل or

جملة أمرية or

- If she works hard, she can get a promotion.
- If they have finished the H.W, they will go to the cinema.
- If you need any help, ask me.
- If you want a high score, you should plan your time.

Usage:

تعبر الحالة الأولى عن أحداث محتملة في المستقبل

- If she works hard, she will pass the test.
- If Saber goes to an interview, he should wear nice clothes.
لاحظ أن استخدام (Should) تعبر عن النصيحة أو الاستحباب .
تعبر الحالة الأولى عن توقع أو إمكانية الحدث .
- If you speak English well, you may get this job.
تعبر الحالة الأولى عن وعد أو أمنية أو تهديد .
- If you come first in the English test, I will give you this good camera.
- If I win the gold medal, I will be very famous.
- I won't lend you any ,money if you insist on spending it carelessly.

ملاحظات هامة

١ - يمكن استخدام (unless) بدلا من (If) كالاتى :

- Unless you come first in the test, I won't give you this good camera.
- Unless I call you, don't come to my office.

٢- يمكن استخدام (provided (that) - on condition (that) - in the event(that) supposing (that))

* Provided you study harder, you will come first in the test.

* You can have my car as long as you have a driving licence.

٣- يمكن استخدام (Should) بدلا من (If) كالتالي : حذف If الحالة الأولى

* Should I call you on your mobile, come to my office.

* Should he receive my call, he will come immediately.

لاحظ استخدام المصدر بعد (he)

The Second Conditional الحالة الثانية

Form

If past simple ماضى بسيط (would- could- might) + المصدر
(would – could – might) + المصدر if past simple ماضى بسيط

Usage :

تعبر الحالة الثانية عن أحداث ممكنة ولكنها غير محتملة في الحاضر أو المستقبل .

- If we took the car, we would pay for parking.

(we decided not to take it)

- I could watch the film if they showed it on television.

(I don't think they will show it)

تعبر الحالة الثانية عن اشياء غير حقيقية او مستحيلة

* He'd buy this yacht if he had a million pounds.

(He doesn't have a million pounds)

* If I were you, I'd listen to the weather forecast before the picnic.

(I can never be you.)

لاحظ استخدام (If I were you) للنصيحة ونستخدم هنا (were) مع كل الضمائر

ملاحظات هامة

هي فعل الجملة الاساسي (were) مع ملاحظة ان (If) بدلا من (were) يمكن استخدام.

* If I Were I younger, I'd play football with you.

* Were I younger, I'd play football with you.

ثم الفاعل ثم (المصدر + (were) ستخدم (were) اذا كان فعل الجملة فعلا اخر غير

- * If it rained, the match would be postponed.
- * Were it to rain, the match would be postponed.

يمكن ان نستخدم (Had) بدلا من (If) مع ملاحظة ان (had) هي فعل الجملة الاساسي.

- If he had enough time, he would go to the club.
- Had he enough time, he would go to the club.

The Third Conditional الحالة الثالثة

Form

If past perfect (had + P.P) ماض تام + الفاعل (would - could - might) + have +-P.P

الفاعل + (mould - could - might) + have + p.p if past perfect

(had + P.P) ماض تام

Usage

تعبر الحالة الثالثة عن حدث خيالى فى الماضى

- * If it had continued raining, the town would have flooded.
(It didn't continue raining)
- * Amira wouldn't have overslept if she had set the alarm clock.
(she didn't set the alarm clock)

تعبر الحالة الثالثة عن الندم على شىء فى الماضى

- * If I hadn't missed the interview, I might have got the job.
(I missed the interview)

يمكن استخدام (Had) بدلا من (If) ويليهما فاعل ثم تصريف ثالث

- If he had played well, he would have won.
- Had he played well, he would have won.

ملاحظات هامة

١- يمكن استخدام (unless) بدلا من (If) فى كل الحالات:

- * Unless he came late, I wouldn't punish him.
- * Unless they had taken a taxi, they would have been late.
- ٢- يمكن استخدام فى حالة (on-in case of) فى حالة الشرط المثبت.
- * In case of coming, she will welcome her.

لاحظ : استخدام شبه الجملة (اسم / verb + ing)

٣- يمكن استخدام (بدون Without لولا But for) فى حالة الشرط المنفى.

- * Without arriving early, they would miss the train.

لاحظ : استخدام شبه الجملة (اسم / verb + ing)

Exercises on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

L If I had toothache, I.....to the dentist.

- a) would go b) will go c) go d) would have go**

2. Had I know, I.....to him.

- a) will talk b) would have talked c) would talk d) can talk**

3. If he read the story, he.....it.

- a) will enjoy b) enjoys c) would enjoy d) can enjoy**

4. If she.....enough money, she would have to buy a new dress.

- a) is having b) has c) had had d) had**

5. Unless the driver had been careful, he.....an accident.

- a) would have had b) wouldn't have had**

- c) would have d) will have had**

6.....your suggestions, the project wouldn't have been a success.

- a) In case b) But for c) If d) Had**

7. Had I a car, I.....you a lift.

- a) 'd have given b) will give c) would give d) can give**

8. Chain this bicycle to this metal bar.....someone steals it.

- a) providing b) unless c) if d) in case**

9.....you wear warm clothes, you will get cold.

- a) Providing b) Unless c) Supposing d) Without**

10. If you.....me it was important, I would have tried harder.

- a) would tell b) did tell c) had told d) told**

11. I'd be only happy to help you if I.....the money.

- a) were having b) have c) would have d) had**

12. Who knows what.....if he had met her ten years before.

- a) would happen b) might happen**
c) might have happened d) happened

13. If they had won with only ten players, it.....a miracle!

a) had been b) was c) would be d) would have been

14. Everything would have been perfect If it.....yesterday.

a) hadn't rained b) wouldn't ram

c) weren't raining d) isn't raining

15. I think you.....if you had been with us and you'd seen the state of the rooms.

a) would complain

b) had complained

c) did complain

d) would have complained

16. If you.....every irregular verb in the English language, you wouldn't fail the test.

a) didn't know b) knew c) hadn't known d) would have known

17. If everybody had asked him to stay.....?

a) was he resigned

b) could be resign

c) would he have resigned

d) did he resign

18. If we didn't get heat and light from the sun, there ... no life on Earth.

a) would be b) will be c) is d) would have been

19. If you.....the temperature at the sun's centre, you'd find it was 15 million degrees.

a) take b) took c) had taken d) 'd take

20.....OK if you look at the sun wearing sunglasses?

a) Was it b) Will it be c) Would it be d) Is it

21. If he.....at the sun, he wouldn't have damaged his sight.

a) hadn't looked b) didn't look

c) doesn't look d) wouldn't look

22. I.....to the moon if I were asked.

a) go b) would go c) will go d) would have gone

a) don't go b) wouldn't go
c) won't go d) wouldn't have gone

a) erupt **b) erupted** **c) had erupted** **d) will erupt**

a) will listen

b) would listen

c) would have listened

d) listen

a) look b) looked c) had looked d) will look

a) aren't b) wouldn't be c) wouldn't have been d) will not be

a) were b) was c) had been d) is

a) would give b) will give c) give d) would have given

a) won't get b) wouldn't get c) don't get d) can get

a) will be b) is c) would be d) can be

a) didn't spend b) don't spend c) haven't spent d) hadn't spent

a) will eat b) will have eaten
c) would have eaten d) ate

a) would see b) see c) have seen d) saw

35. If I had taken the time to do it correctly, it.....out better.

- a) would had come b) would come
c) would have came d) would have come

36. If you ride the bus to Dahab, it.....seven hours to get there.

- a) would take b) took c) would have taken d) will take

37. If you stay up all night tonight, you.....all day.

- a) will sleep b) slept c) will have slept d) sleep

38. If I were you, I.....more time studying.

- a) would spend b) spent c) am spending d) would have spent

39. He will catch the train.....coming in time.

- a) if b) in case of c) unless d) in spite of

40. Had it rained so heavily, we..... floods.

- a) wouldn't have had b) would have
c) would have had d) may have

41. If Mona had come ten minutes earlier, she.....her boss.

- a) would meet b) would have met
c) will meet d) meets

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly

- 1. If you're busy, we would walk now.**
- 2. Were I you, I can invite Tamer to the party.**
- 3. How long will he be away if he choose Brazil?**
- 4. If I had been more careful, I would have crashed into the wall.**
- 5. If the film hadn't been funny, I wouldn't laugh.**
- 6. If I went to England, I would have met my pen friend.**
- 7. What would happen if the storm reaches our area?**
- 8. Were he to arrives early, he would see us.**
- 9. If you walked all the way, it will take about three hours.**

10. Had he been there, he would meet her.
11. If water is heated, it will evaporate.
12. Were I in your place now, I will choose to decline this offer.
13. No one succeeds in anything unless he really insisted to do it.
14. If she had more information about Hany's situation, she helped him.
15. Only if Mahmoud apologises to his mother, she would forgive him.
16. They wouldn't get the highest marks in case of studying harder and harder.
17. If we freeze water, it will turn into ice.
18. Were he visited Aswan, he would go to the Valley of the Kings.
19. A student doesn't get high marks if he studies very hard.
20. If Hisham had walked all the way, he would be there by now.
21. If you hadn't stopped that day, I would never meet you.
22. If it had rained more, we not have had a drought.
23. If I get sick, I would not go to school.
24. If we don't use less energy, the earth heats up even more.
25. If countries act now, we would have time to avoid climate disaster.

Language Functions

Asking for and Giving Advice:

Asking for instructions	Giving instructions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Can you tell me.....? * Would you show me.....? * What should I do if.....? * What do you think I ought to do next? * Would you tell me.....? * What do you think I ought to do next? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * You should make (be) sure that * Be careful (not) to..... * Remember (not) to..... * First, you should..... Then, you have to..... After that, you must Finally, you ought to ..

Exercise on Language Functions

Respond to each of the following situations:

1. A friend from another country wants to phone someone from a public phone in Egypt. Tell him/ her what to do first.
2. Your brother is almost 16. he wants to have his national ID issued. Tell him what to do.
3. Your sister doesn't know how to use her new mobile. Give her instructions.
4. Someone asks you about the way to the nearest metro station. You help him!
5. Someone helps you reach your destination.
6. Your brother bought a new laptop. Give him advice before using it.

Paragraphs

*** How we can help to protect and improve the environment?**

Environmental pollution **التلوث البيئي** is a very serious problem nowadays. This pollution causes great damage **اضرار كبيرة** the environment and things. There are a lot of things we can do to preserve **يحافظ على** the environment. Factories should be moved to land outside cities. A great r of trees should be planted along the sides of the roads. Trees take in carbon dioxide and release oxygen, so they help to clean the air.

The government should pass laws to reduce the number of cars on the roads. We have to spread awareness **ينشر الوعي** among ordinary people of the importance of preserving the environment. We must teach young children how to keep the environment clean. If we succeed in preserving (conserving) the environment, our children and grand children can enjoy we live in. Preserving the environment has become a very important issue **مسألة هامة** in the modern world.

Translations

ع. (2010) ث.

1- Scientists believe that the earth's climate may be warming up. Many areas previously covered with ice are now melting due to the increase of carbon dioxide pollution. Another reason for global warming is the loss of rain forests.

يعتقد العلماء ان مناخ الارض ستزداد حرارته، فقد بدأ ذوبان الجليد الذى كان سابقا فى الماضى يغطى مساحات عديدة نظرا لزيادة التلوث الناتج عن ثانى اكسيد الكربون. وهناك سبب اخر للاحتباس الحرارى وهو ازالة الغابات المطيرة.

١ - النوم بجوار المحمول شديد الخطورة . فالمحمول بمثابة مفاعل نووى صغير.

*** It is very dangerous to sleep beside a cell phone (mobile) Because it is like a small nuclear reactor.**

٢ - اشاد العديد من دول العالم بسياسة مصر فى الاصلاح الاقتصادى والتخطيط العلمى.

*** Several countries of the world praised Egypt's policy in economic reform and scientific planning.**

* rain forests (n)	الغابات المطيرة	* praise (v)(n)	يمدح/يشيد- مدح
* nuclear reactor (n)	مفاعل نووى	* policy (n)	سياسة
* economic reform	اصلاح اقتصادى	* previously (adv)	سابقا

2-Many people say that they are too busy to go swimming or to play football, But they do not have to do special exercises to be fit. In this case, walking or even cleaning the house is just as good for, them as practising games.

يقول كثير من الناس انهم مشغولون لدرجة انهم لا يستطيعون الذهاب للسباحة او لعب كرة القدم ولكن ليس من الضرورى ان يقوموا بتدريبات رياضية معينة ليكونوا لائقين بدنيا وفى هذه الحالة فان المشى او حتى تنظيف المنزل جيدا بالنسبة لهم مثل ممارسات الالعاب الرياضية.

*** It is necessary to provide the secure healthy environment for the disabled and looking after the talented and supplying the educational systems that develop their talents.**

٢ - يجب على الشعوب العربية ان تتحد لكى تقاوم العدوان الاسرائيلى على الشعب الفلسطينى وعلى القدس الشريف

*** The Arab people should unite to resist the Israeli aggression on the Palestinian people and on the honourable Jerusalem.**

*secure (adj)	امن	*the disabled	ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة
* talent (n)	موهبة	* resist (v)	يقاوم
*aggression (n)	عدوان	* unite (v)	يتحد

3- Health is a splendid treasure that completes our happiness, it's worthy saying that we can't really enjoy our life if we are unhealthy. Healthy people are always proud of what they can achieve in the fields of sports and hard work. For an unhealthy person, life is no more than pain and suffering.

*** Ecotourism depends on the lovers of enjoying the splendid nature such as staing in the mountains or in the desert away from cities**

٢- لابد ان نقنع الناس بالتبرع بدم لان هذا يساعد فى انقاذ حياة الكثيرين من البشر

*** We should persuade people to donate blood because this helps to save the lives of many human beings.**

*splendid (adj)	عظيم- رائع	*worthy (adj)	يدير- مستحق
*ecotourism (n)	سياحة فيها حفاظ على البيئة	* pain (n)	الم
*donate blood	التبرع بالدم	*persuade (v)	يقنع

Test 6

Language Functions

1- Respond to each of the following situations:

- 1) You want to fix a problem in your mobile. Ask your friend for advice.
- 2) You ask your friend to recommend you a place to spend the weekend.
- 3) Your brother asks you for instructions to operate his new radio. Give him instructions.
- 4) You would like to use your friend's bike.

2- Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

1- A: Can I help you, sir?

B: Yes, I'd like a compass and two red markers, please

A: Here you are.

Place:.....

Speaker A:

Speaker B :

Function:.....

2. A: Can I help you, sir?

B: I'd like a bunch of flowers for a wedding.

A: What kind do you prefer?

B: I prefer roses.

Place:.....

Speaker A:

Speaker B:

Function:

1- Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d:

1-.....warming is a problem that affects every country in the world.

- a) National b) Global c) International d) Universal

2- Egypt exports a lot of.....to other countries.

- a) conducts b) instructs c) deducts d) products

3- I get a headache if I.....too long on the computer.

- a) will spend b) spend c) spent d) an spending

4- My favourite musical.....is the violin.

- a) play b) instrument c) equipment d) device

5- If it rains for much longer, the river.....

- a) will flood b) is flooding c) has flooded d) flood**

6- If it rains tomorrow, we..... at home.

- a) will stay b) stayed c) say d) would say**

d) an spending d) device

7. They.....into the tree and extracted a thin piece of wood.

- a) drilled b) pulled c) called d) filled**

8. If scientists the rings of trees, they can find information about our climate in'the past.

- a) study b) studied c) will study d) would study**

9. The.....are the parts of trees that grow under the ground and hold the tree securely.

- a) leaves b) roots c) bark d) branches**

10. If there.....any rain, fields get dry.

- a) isn't b) weren't c) hadn't been d) wasn't**

11. If you.....this medicine, you won't get better.

- a) didn't take b) hadn't taken c) wouldn't take d) don't take**

12. The trunk forms a new.....of wood every year.

- a) hole b) band c) border d) ring**

13. If you.....those oranges now, they won't taste very sweet.

- a) picked b) will pick ' c) had picked d) pick**

14. The.....is the hard outer part of a tree.

- a) branch b) root c) bark d) trunk**

15. Trees provide us.....many useful things from rubber to medicine.

- a) for b)with c) by d) trunk**

16. Water.....if you put it in a freezer.

- a) will freeze b) freezes c) freeze d) froze**

4- Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

1. Blackboard is very stiff, thick paper used especially for making boxes.
2. Soap is the liquid that carries food through plants and trees.
3. Trunks are the food factory of a plant.
4. The street where I live is only three meters width.
5. If you kick the ball too hard, you break the window.
6. He made me a favour that I will never forget.

Reading

5- Read the following passage and then answer the questions:

One major obstacle in the struggle to lower carbon dioxide emissions, which are believed to play a role in climate change is the destruction of rainforests. Trees naturally store more carbon dioxide and the trees of the tropical rainforests in the Amazon, for example, store an average of 500 tons of carbon dioxide per Hectare. When such trees are harvested, they release their carbon dioxide into the atmosphere. This release of carbon dioxide through the destruction of tropical forests, which experts estimate accounts for 20 % of global carbon dioxide emissions annually traps heat in the earth's atmosphere, which leads to global warming.

This difficult problem can be solved in many ways. One possible solution motivating governments to protect their forests. This solution could lead to a drastic reduction in the levels of carbon dioxide. Governments should issue laws to ban cutting forests. Projects of any kind should be banned on these forests. As for individuals, we should try to plant more trees in streets and around our houses, We should always remember that the more trees we cut, the more we poison ourselves.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why are rainforests vital to our life?
2. How can governments help saving forests?
3. Find words in the passage which mean:
a) encourage b) every year

B) Choose -the correct answer from a. b. c or d:

4. A hectare is

- a) a length of time b) an area of land
- c) a governmental law d) a global problem

5. Rain forests help us solve the problem of.....

- a) water shortage b) air pollution
- c) climate change d) shortage of carbon dioxide

<p><u>6- Read the following passage and then answer the questions:</u></p>

People may be divided into two types: winners and losers. Because our families and friends have a great influence on us as we grow, we are born helpless and dependent on our environment. Winners are able to change their situation and become independent by being responsible for their own lives. They don't blame others for their mistakes. They do their own thinking, they listen to experiences. They do their own thinking , they listen to experiences. They enjoy work . play, food ana the world of nature. They free enjoy themselves but they can postpone it if duty calls.

Losers, on the other hand never learn to take responsibility for their own live. There are many causes why people can become losers: disease, poor nutrition cruelty, unhappy relationships and bad experiences. These can interfere with the normal progress towards becoming a winner. But whereas winners f ight the situations, losers hang on to them, and use them as excuses. Losers usual feel anxious, unhappy and bored. They are afraid to try new things and often repeat their own mistakes again and again. Losers spend their lives waiting for something wonderful to happen to save them from their problems with their living but never try to change.

A) Answer the following questions:

- 1. Give a suitable title to the passage.**
- 2. What determines the life of the winners?**
- 3. Find in the text words which mean:**

- a) to put off until a letter time, b) to get in the way of

B) Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d:'

4. When winners fail at times, they.....

- a) are afraid to try new things b) never keep their self-confidence
- c) spend their time waiting d) never repeat their own mistakes

5. Losers are people who.....

- a) blame others for their mistakes b) overcome their bad experiences
- c) learn to take responsibility d) try to change

The Reader (The Prisoner of Zenda)

1- A) Answer the following questions:

1. Does princess Flavia know that Rassendyli is not the King?
What do she about him?
2. How did Rassendyli and Sapt get a permit to leaves Strelsau?
- 3-Who do Sapt and Rassendyli see at the fork of the road?

B- Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:

"You mustn't try too hard. I'm not sure it was a good idea to ride ai through the oidtoivn."

1. Who says this? To whom?
2. Where and when is this said?
3. Why did the person ride alone through the old town?

C- Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

1. Sapt's manner shows that he is jealous of the King's success.
2. When Sapt and Rassendyli return to the lodge, they find that the real was killed.

Writing

8- Write a paragraph of about 100 words about:

**Plants can make the world a better place to live in"*

9- A- Translate into Arabic:

Some scientists have found that people are more likely to catch a cold when they are unhappy or under stress. This is because the immune system is less effective when we are worried. Doctors have also found out that people with mid olds get better if the doctor is kind.

B- Translate into English:

- ١- يقاس تقدم الامم بمدى اهتمامها بقضايا البيئة على اختلاف انواعها.
- ٢- لم تعد الوظيفة الحكومية هدفا يسعى اليه الشباب الطموح المتطلع الى غد افضل.



Listening Text

Presenter:	In last, week's programme, professor Jeremy beech answered some of your questions about trees. Today we welcome professor beech back to talk about forests. Professor, could you start by telling us about the different kinds of forests?
Prof, beech:	Yes, of course. Well, as we all know, a forest is a large area of land which is covered by trees. About twenty percent of the earth's surface is covered with forest. Different climates and soils support different types of forest. Let's look first at rain forests, (like the ones in south America'and central Africa. Here, temperatures are high and it rains a lot. There are many different types of trees in rainforests. Some grow very tall to reach the sunlight above. Below them are shorter trees, and below these are other low plants. Rainforests make up about seven percent of the earth's surface. The second type of forests are found in places where the climate is neither very hot nor very cold. These forests consist of trees which lose their leaves in the winter or in the dry season. The final kind of forest is found in countries with cold climates and on the sides of mountains. Most of the trees here never lose their leaves. Their branches point downwards so that snow can fall off them during the winter. The largest forest of this type is in northern Europe and covers eleven million square kilometers.
Presenter:	that's very interesting, professor. Thank you. Now, if any listeners would like to ask professor beech a question, you can contact the programme.....

Vocabulary on Listening

above (adv)	اعلى	mountain (n)	جبل
absorb/take in (v)	يمتص	parts (n)	اجزاء
below (prep)	اسفل	Percent (n)	نسبة مئوية
climate (n)	مناخ	rainforests (n)	غابات استوائية
consist of (v)	يتكون من	rainy (adj)	ممطر
Contact (v)	يتصل بـ	Reach (v)	يصل الى
covered (with/in/by/adj)	مغطى بـ	Season (n)	موسم
describe (v)	يصف	Side (n)	جانب
different (adj)	مختلف	Snow(n)	ثلج
downwards (adv)	الى الاسفل	Soil (n)	تربة
dry (adj)	جاف	Square (n)	مربع
fall off (v)	يسقط	Sunlight (n)	ضوء الشمس
forest (n)	غابة	Support (v)	يساند/ يدعم
Grow (v)	يكبر/ينمو	Surface (n)	سطح
Make up 7%	تشكل ٧%	Temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة
Map (n)	خريطة	Type (n)	نوع

Reading :

Murder at the orient express

Hercule poirot, probably Agatha Christie's most famous detective, had finished working on a crime in turkey and was about to go home on the orient express. When poirot got on the train, he noticed that it was unusually full for the time of year.

Soon after the train had left Istanbul, a wealthy businessman, mr ratchett, asked poirot to protect him because he believed his life was in danger. Although ratchett offered poirot a lot of money to do this, the detective did not believe the man's story and refused to help him.

During the night, the train had to stop because of heavy snow. The next morning ratchet was found dead: he had been murdered. Had someone got on the train and killed him? ,

Now poirot believed ratchett's story and, together with a doctor who was also on the train, he started work to solve the crime. The two men soon discovered that ratchet had a secret identity. He was not a businessman, but a criminal who was hated by many people.

After examining the train and ratchett's body, poirot realized that the man had almost certainly been murdered by one of the 13 people from the same part of the train as ratchet. This meant that there were 13 suspects. One by one, poirot discovered that these 13 people all had a good reason to hate ratchet. Together, they had carefully planned what they were going to do and had all taken part in the murder. This was why the orient express had been so full on that journey.

Vocabulary on Listening

crime (n)	جريمة	notice (v)	يلاحظ
criminal (n)	مجرم	offer (v)	يعرض
danger (n)	خطر	orient (n)	الشرق
detective (n)	مخبر/ضابط تحريات	plan (n)	يخطط
examine (v)	يفحص	protect (v)	يحمي
full (adj)	مملوء	probably (adv)	من المحتمل

hate (v)	يكره	realize (v)	يدرك
identity (n)	هوية	reason (n)	سبب
impossible (adj)	مستحيل	refuse (v)	يرفض
journey (n)	رحلة	solve	يحل
mean (v)	يقصد/ يعنى	suspect (v) (n)	يشك/مشتبه فيه
murder (n)	جريمة قتل	wealthy (adj)	ثرى

Critical Thinking & communication:

Diseases (n)	امراض	Salt (n)	ملح
Empty (adj)	فارغ	Scene (n)	مشهد فى فيلم (مسرحية)
Favourite (adj)	مفضل	Straight (adj)	مستقيم
Habit (n)	عادة	Survey (n)	استبيان / مسح
Heavily (adv)	بغزارة	Thirsty (adj)	ظمأن / متعطش
Insects (n)	حشرات	Treat (v)	يعالج / يعامل
Mystery (n)	لغز / غموض	Trunk (n)	جذع
Purpose (n)	هدف / غرض	Weapon (n)	سلاح

Phrases , Expressions & Idioms:

At the end of	فى نهاية	In a short time	فى فترة صغيرة
(be) connected with	متصل بـ	In danger	فى خطر
Do a survey	يقوم بعمل استبيان	Look straight	ينظر مباشرة
Fall off the leaves	يسقط من على الاوراق	On the sides of	على جانبي
Find out about	يكتشف	Point downwards	يشير لاسفل
Get off the train	ينزل من القطار	Put down roots	يستوطن / يستقر
Get on the train	يركب القطار	Solve a crime	يحل لغز الجريمة

Notes on Vocabulary

(1) north northern

north (n) الشمال

» We were driving from north to south.

Northern (adj) شمالي

» born in northern France.

Note: in the north of - in northern

Neither nor (الفعل يكون مفردا او جمعا)

Ex. : neither mazen nor mariam was (were) at school.

Ex. : neither his daughter nor his sons were at the funeral

إذا كان الفاعل الثاني مفردا فيمكن ان يكون الفعل مفردا او جمعا اما اذا كان الفاعل الثاني جمعا فلا يكون الفعل الا جمعا

Make + مصدر + مفعول يجعل

Ex: you can take a horse to the water but you can't make it drink.

Opposites

Absord	يمتص	Give out	يطلق
Appear	يظهر	Disappear	يختفي
Dead	ميت	Olive	حي
Downwards	الى الاسفل	Upwards	الاعلى
Dry	جاف	Wet	مبتل
Innocent	بري	Guilty	مذنب
minor	ثانوى / غير هام	major	اساسي

Verbs & Prepositions

In			
Covered (in\with\by)	مغطى بـ	Take in	يمتص
Take part in	يشترك في		
from			
Suffer from	يعانى من	different from	مختلف عن
Up			
Make up	بشكل / يكون / يخلق / قصة	Pick up	يلتقط

General exercises on units 4-6

1) Respond to each of the following situations

- 1. A friend asks your opinion about the importance of the rainforests.**
- 2. A friend who has never visited your country asks for your advice about a place to see-in Egypt.**
- 3. A friend from another country wants to phone someone from a public phone in Egypt. He / she has never done this before. Tell him / her what to do first.**
- 4. Someone asks what you think about films which have been made from books.**
- 5. You congratulate your brother who has just bought a new car.**
- 6. You warn your sister not to play with matches.**
- 7. You advise your sister to wash her hands before eating.**
- 8. Your classmate is talking loudly in the library.**
- 9. You accept your friend's apology for losing your book.**
- 10. Your friend wishes you success in your exams.**

2) Mention the place, the speaker and the language function in each of the following mini-dialogues;

- 1. A: can I help you?**
B: I want to send a registered letter.
A: it will cost you 15 pounds.
B: here you are.

Place:.....
Speaker A:
Speaker B:
function:...

- 2. A: can I see your ticket, please?**
B: here you are. When will the film start?
A: at 7:30.
B: thank you.

Place:.....
Speaker A:
Speaker B:
function:...

3. A; are you being served, sir?
B; no. nobody has come to serve me.

A: oh! Sorry sir. What would you like to have?

B: I'd like to have a cur of tea and some biscuits.

Place:.....
Speaker A:
Speaker B:
function:...

4. A: how much is this cream?

B; only le. 12.

A: here you are. How often should I use it?

Place:.....
Speaker A:
Speaker B:
function:...

5. A: I'd like to book a return ticket to Aswan.

B: here you are. Platform no. 5. Have a good trip.

A: thank you.

Place:.....
Speaker A:
Speaker B:
function:...

6. A: I have a severe headache what should I do now?

B: take this medicine, regularly. And you have

to take some rest. A: thank you.

Place:.....
Speaker A:
Speaker B:
function:...

Exercises Based on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The archaeologists are.....for the remains from the third dynasty.
a- doing b- making c- finding d- excavating
- Sami is with the doctor because he was bitten by a.....insect.
a- poison b- venom c- poisonous d- danger
- There are many.....types of trees in rainforests.
a- differ b- different c- difference d- differentiate

4. There are many.....in the music ro'om.
a- knives b- instruments c- tools , d- hammers
5. Sam was very.....today. He cleaned the house and'fixed the car.
a- productive b- produce c- production d- producer
6. I told you that I don't want to.....with you!
a- collapse b- complete c- connect
7. The mobile phone is for me to use tomorrow.
a- bought b- change c- recharging d- charge
8. Fouad was so angry that he had a.....look in his eyes.
a- murderer b- murderous c- murder d- murdering
9. Madame, can I ask you to.....the person who stole your bag?
a-identify b- identity c- identification d- identifying
10. The police officer observed the group with much.....
a- suspicious b- suspects c- doubts d- suspicion
11. It will take about 24 hours for the to.....
a- shorten b- lengthen c- widen d- harden
12. On December 3,1926, Agatha Christie.....home without telling anyone.
a- leaves b- has left c- is leaving d- left
13. She believed that her life was.....danger.
a- with b- of c- in d- at
14. Some archaeologists..... the ancient city of ur.
a- excavated b- did c- made d- extracted
15. The.....had finished working on the crime. ,
a- attractive b- addictive c- alternative d- detective
16. The hard outer covering of a tree is called the.....
a- park b-bark c- brick d- pick
17. The next morning, the woman was found.....
a- deadly b- died c- dead d- death
18. We still don't know the.....of the other man in the picture.
a- density b- identity c- certainty d- anxiety

19. When he got.....the train, he found that his brother was waiting For him in a car.

a- of b- on c- off d- away

20.How.....is the Nile at Sohag?

a- wide b- long c- high d- far

Student's book - Workbook - Longman exercises - previous exams:

21-When I was at school, I won a poetry writing.....

a- race b- article c- competition d- game

22-She sent me the report as an e-mail.....

a- attachment b- letter c- picture d- article

23- The cover of my book is made of.....

a- glass b- rubber c- cardboard d- wood

24. The little girl doesn't want to sing because she is.....

a- innocent b- secret c- spy d- shy

25. My favourite musical.....is the piano.

a- player b- instrument c- tool d- equipment

26. Put some.....on a brush, and then clean your teeth for two full minutes.

a- turpentine b- toothpaste c- rubber d- product

27. the.....of a tree carry/carries food to all parts of the tree.

a- roots b- bark c- branches d- sap

28. A.....writes articles for newspapers.

a- lawyer b- doctor c- politician d- journalist

29. a politician studies.....

a- science b- non-fiction c- political science d- medicine

30. Nobel prize winner Ahmed Zewail is seen as a.....figure in Chemistry.

a- pioneering b- customary c- developing d- stylish

31. After.....your examination, put your pencils on your desks.

a- excavating b- developing c- completing d- publishing

32. Yehia Haqqi had a unique writing..... which is respected today.

a- bark b- district c- pioneer d- style

33. The.....of the bark beetle destroyed many trees.

a- development b- invasion c- transmitter d- identity

34. After the accident mother had....., so she didn't remember who we were.

a- suspect b- invention c- sap d- amnesia

35. it is.....to offer your guests something to drink.

a- customary b- secretive c- poisonous d- shy

Exercises Based on grammar

36. A: How.....of the earth's surface is covered by forest?

B: 20%.

a- wide b- long c- many d- much

37. i squash before.

a- never play b- have never played

c- am never playing d- had never played

38. If it.....in small doses, the drug has no harmful effects.

a- is taken b- was taken c- takes d- has take-

39. If she.....well in her exams, she will go to college in October.

a- had done b- will do c- does d- is doing

40. If the bark is badly damaged, the tree.....

a- has died b- dies c- would die

41. It.....that there are no survivors of the crash.

a- has feared b- fears c- is feared d- would fear

42. It.....heavily when he woke up.

a- was snowing b- has snowed c- snows d- is snowing

43. She.....the letters yet.

a- doesn't type b- has typed c- hasn't typed d- didn't type

44. The suspect.....in a hotel in the north of England.

a- is seeing b- was seen c- has seen d- had seen

45. We.....that he has recovered from his illness.

a- believe b- are believing c- were believing d- are believed

Student's book - workbook - Ldngman exercises - previous

46. we arrived half an hour late. The film.....half an hour ealier.

a- began b- was beginning c- had begun d- has begun

47. Agatha Christie's books.....into more than 40 languages.

a- have been translated b- have translated
c- translated d- were being translated

48. The romans.....prtra nearly two thousand years ago.

a- have captured b- were cabtured
c- captured d- had captured

49. Your train leaves in ten minutes. If you hurry, you..... it.

a- catch b- will catch c- would catch d- are catching

50. If I am thirsty, I.....water.

a- drink b- would drink c- am drinking d- drank

51. Oxygen.....by trees.

a- is producing b- has produced
c- was producing d- is produced

52. If you don't wear glasses when you need them, your eyes.....

a- will suffer b- suffered c- are suffering d- will be suffering

53. Plastic goods.....from fossil fuels.

a- is produced b- are producing
c- are produced d- produced

54. If you heat paper to the right temperature, it.....

a- bums b- burn c- is burnt d- will be burning

55. Hannah will be a good girl if you.....her something to resd.

a- has given b- had given c- giving d- give

56. Many types of trees....in large gardens like the orman gardens.

a- is found b- is finding c- are found d- finds

57. You waste your time if you.....too much television.

a- watch b- watches c- watched d- are watching

58. Before the trees were cut down, there.....a beautiful landscape,

a- has been b- is c- were d- had been

59. The team.....uniforms while they played the practice match.

a- are wearing b- wore c- wears d- were wearing

60. Rainforests.....in areas that have a lot of rain.

a- grow b- are grown c- grown d- grows

Exercises Based on Vocabulary

the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

1. The street where I live only three metres width.
2. The invade army advanced through the city.
3. The young man's innocent was proved.
4. Seven of the suspects have been convicted.
5. A suspense is a person you think may have done a crime.
6. He transformed English literature into arabic.
7. He's a world experience on archaeology.
8. I found the story very confused.
9. Trees help the earth to breathing:
10. Trees protect us from global warning.
11. Sap can be used to make rub.
12. In addition to this, trees also give us valuable chemistry.
13. You may be surprising to hear wood products are used in Some types of cream.
14. In everyon's surprise, ahmed won the frist prize.
15. He has been a law since 1990.
16. Travelling by plane sometimes makes me a headache.

Exercises Based on grammar

17. When I was younger, I use to want to be a pilot.
18. If you kick the bali too hard, you break that Window.
19. The mousetrap written by Agatha chrisitie.
20. My father loves his job, he worked for the same company for 20 years.
21. Jf you stand on the chair, you fall down.
22. Help! The little boy is attacked by my dog.

23. The case was arguing successfully by six of the lawyers.
24. The good thing is that if we went together, we arrive at the same time.
25. Colds are transmitter when you don't cover your mouth while coughing.
26. be careful what you say because there are spy in the distrjct.
27. If you don't wear a hat in the sun, you would damage your skin.
28. If you went to bed early, you wake up refreshed.
29. Salma is visited her grandparents over the weekend.
- 30.while she was being asleep, thieves broke in and stole her handbag.

Read the following passage and then answer the questions:

Trees have often been important in history. On a famous island, there is a tree that is more than 12 meters in width. It is growing exactly in the same place as Hippocrates, the father of medicine, used to teach his pupils. And in another place and time, the English hero Robin Hood is believed to have hidden from his enemies in the branches of large trees.

The English language uses many words connected with trees. You can talk about the branches a bank or a shop and the trunk of the human body. And if someone has lived somewhere for a long time, you can say they have put down roots.

Answer the following questions

- 1. What does the phrase the father of medicine mean?**
- 2. Why did Robin Hood hide in trees?**
- 3. The English language uses many words connected with trees. Give examples.**

B. Choose the best answer from a. b. c, or d

- 4. what did Hippocrates do on the island of kos?**
- a- he grew trees b- he treated patients
- c- he taught pupils d- he took medicine
- 5. you say people have put down roots when they have.....**
- a- stayed in a place for a long time b- lived near some trees
- c- moved house d- just moved somewhere new

writing

6. Write a paragraph of about 100 words about: (Workbook)

"A film you have enjoyed recently"

7. A) Translation into Arabic:

1. Agatha visited Baghdad where she met max mallow. Max took Agatha on a tour pf Baghdad and the desert. Agatha accompanied max on his annual archaeological expeditions for nearly 30 years. She continued to write, both at home and on field trips and her book "come. Tell me how you live" wittily describes her days on digs in Syria. She and max were happily married for 46 years.

2. Trees are the largest and longest living organisms on Earth.They are able to take water and salts out of the Earth and lift them up to the leaves, sometimes over 400 ft above. By means of photosynthesis the leaves Combine the water and salt^ with carbon dioxide the air to produce the nutrients whfch feed the tree. Trees also remove carbon dioxide, the main greenhouse gas from the air.

3. If wood is heated, chemicals are produced which can be used to make medicines and some kinds of plastics. Wood Products are also used in some type of ice cream. Trees are the largest and longest living organisms on earth.

translate into English:

١- بينما كان ينهى قصة كان بفكر فى القصة التالية .

٢- لقد نشرت كتبها فى اكثر من مائة دولة.

٣- ان قطع الاشجار فى المدن فعل سىء فالاشجار تعطينا الظل فى الصيف، واللون الاخضر يجعلنا نشعر بالارتياح.

٤- لا يستطيع الانسان بأى حال من الاحوال ان يستغنى عن الماء والهواء ولولاهما لهلكت جميع الكائنات الحية.

٥- كانت والدة اجاثا خجولة بينما كالن والدها اجتماعيا منطلقا.

٧- ان الثورة التى قام بها الشعب المصري يجب ان يكون ثورة تعمير لا تدمى.

Test 4-6

1. responded to each of the following situations:

1. Your friend wants to know your opinion of Yehia Heqqi the man and the writer.
2. Your friend has just witnessed a road accident. Advise him on what he should do.
3. Your little sister is having difficulty in drawing a picture for her story. Give advice.
4. A new student at your school wants to know the way to the headmaster's office. Instruct him.

2. Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

1. A; please turn right at the traffic lights.

B: here we are!

A: yes, thank you. How much?

B; that'll be ten pounds, please.

Place:

Speaker A:.....

Speaker B:

Function:

2. A; where were you at ten o'clock last night?

B: I was at home, watching television.

A: but your neighbours saw you break into
Mr Mazen's house.

B: I didn't break in! I went over to his house
To borrow.

Place:

Speaker A:.....

Speaker B:

Function:

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. After hitting her head in an accident, Salwa couldn't remember anything. Doctor think she has.....

a- influenza b- amnesia c- diabetes d- fever

2. It is believed that Cleopatra died from the.....of a snake.

a- poison b- perfume c- crime d- murder

3. Everybody communicates by e-mail now. Paper mail has become.....

a- modern b- routine c- fashionable d- old-fashioned

4. Trees absorb water from the ground through their.....

a- bark b- fruits c- roots d- leaves

5. There was a mouse in the house, so dad set up a.....

a- criminal b- murder c- mousetrap d- poison

6. All suspects should be treated as.....people until we know for sure that they have committed a crime.

a- shy b- innocent c- dead d- dangerous

7. A border passage.....by Leila- Ahmed.

a- written b- wrote c- was written d- write

8. Salma.....tennis every week since she was five years old.

a- has been playing b- was playing

c- plays d- is playing

9.....Hossam had an injury in his left leg, he finished the match.

a- So' b- When c- Because d- Although

10. if a infant does not get any water, it,.....

a- dead b- dies c- would die d- would be dead

11. If you don't stop listening to that loud music, your headacheworse.

a- got b- will get c- excavation d- district

12. There is a big.....where engineers are building the new metro line.

a- routine b- invasion c- excavation d- district

13. Please.....the file to your e-mail and send it quickly.

a- attach b- establish c- connect d- enclose

14. After the terrible fire.....damage was done to the factory.

a- a lot of b- many c- little d- lots

15. You should go and.....that film. It's great!

a- seeing b- see c- saw d- seen

. Turpentine.....paint and is made from the sap of trees.

a- removes b- removed c- has removed d- is removed

4-Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

1. I want to be a sailor one day, so I can protect the rights of innocent People.

2. Archaeologists find valuable treasures there excavations.

3. Whose the suspect for the murder of John doe?
4. Tommy Beresford and his wife were two secret agencies.
5. The more rain there is in a year, the more wide the tree rings are.
6. Covers of books are usually made of sap.

5- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Flowers produce a fine powder called pollen, which is carried by the wind or by insects to other flowers of the same type so that they can produce seeds. Pollination, the carrying of pollen from one flower to another, is necessary for the reproduction of plants and for the production of food. Scientists estimate that one third of our food depends on insects, mostly bees, for pollination.

But in recent years, there has been a big drop in the populations of pollinators worldwide. There are several reasons. The use of pesticide; has had the side effect of killing pollinators. Air Pollution prevents insects from smelling and effect of killing rotors. Air pollution prevents insects from smelling and finding flowers, which they need for food. Diseases are killing many insects. Growing cities are destroying the environments where pollinators live. Recently, shortages of fruit and vegetables in were blamed on the loss of pollinators. Clearly, it is important that we find solutions quickly.

A: Give short answers to the following questions:

1. What is a pollinator?
2. Is all pollen carried by insects? Explain.
3. Give two reasons why the number of pollinators has dropped.

B: choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

4. Which is the best title for this text?

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| a- the importance of bees | b- pollinators in India |
| c- the loss of pollinators | d- Where have all the flowers gone? |

5. How does air pollution affect pollination?

- | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| a- flowers can't make pollen. |
| b- Insects can't smell the flowers, so they can't find them to pollinate them, |
| c- insects can't pollinate the flowers because they can't see them, d- pollution kills insects. |

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Machu Picchu, Peru, is situated more than 2,100 metres above sea level between higher mountains. It is divided into three areas. At the southern end is the agricultural area. This has large "steps" called terraces cut into the hillsides to make flat spaces for farming. A wall for defense crosses Machu Picchu and separates the agricultural area from the urban and religious areas at the northern end. The urban area has two districts. In the southeastern corner is a district of houses for the nobles. On the eastern side is an industrial district with houses and work shop for laborers. The religious area on the western side is on the highest ground. It has temples and tombs. The 140 buildings of Machu Picchu included.

A: give short answers to the following questions:

1. What are the three areas of Machu Picchu?
2. Why did the buildings of Machu Picchu survive earthquakes?
3. Why did the Incas make terraces for agriculture?

B: choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

4. What does urban mean?
a) Relating to agriculture b) Relating to earthquakes,
c) Relating to mountains d) Relating to towns and cities
5. On which side of Machu Picchu is the agricultural area?
a) North b) East c) South d) West

Reader (The Prisoner of Zenda)

1- A- Answer the following questions:

1. Why wasn't Rassendyll as poisoned as the King was?
2. Why did Fritz and Sapt lock up Johan's mother with the King?
3. Why was Rassendyll afraid when he saw Antoinette de Mauban on the balcony?
4. According to Flavia, how has Rassendyll (the King) changed in his appearance?

B-Read the following quotation then answer the questions:

*"I heard that you rode through the old town alone. That surprised me .
The people there must really have appreciated-what you did."*

1. Who said this?
2. To whom was it said?
3. Why did the people appreciate this action?

C-Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct:

- 1.The rich people who had always lived well would support the Duke.
2. Sapt and Fritz believed that Rassendyll had poisoned the King.

Writing

8- Write a paragraph of about 100 words about: :
"The importance of trees"

9. A) Translate into Arabic:

Many of Agatha Christie's books were made into very successful films. However, Christie did not always agree with the changes that were made to her stories. Sometimes she felt that certain actors weren't at all the way she imagined her characters would look like.

B) Translate into English:

- ١- يقال ان ٥٠٠٠ من الاشياء التى نستخدمها يوميا من الخشب.
- ٢- اذا كان الجو جافا لفترة طويلة ، يستخدم المزارعون الري.